## Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 705SC.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using 705SC to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it for later reference.
- ●Should you lose or damage this guide, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25).
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.

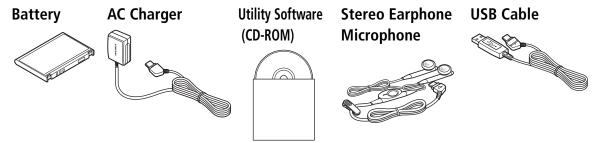
705SC is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

#### Note

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Not all functions and services described in this user guide are available in Japan.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25).
- If there are any missing/misplaced pages in this manual, SoftBank will replace it.

## **Accessories**

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25).



#### Tip

#### microSD<sup>TM</sup> Memory Card

705SC is compatible with microSD<sup>TM</sup> Memory Card (Referred to as "Memory Card" hereafter). Purchase microSD<sup>TM</sup> Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

# **Contents**

Accessories	Time & Date
Contents ii	Time & Date
About This Guidexiii	Time Zone Updating
Safety Precautions xv	Changing Home Time Zone1-20
General Notesxxix	705SC Menus1-20
SAR Certification Information xxxvi	Main Menu
4.6 (1) 6( ( )	Shortcuts
1 Getting Started	Switch Bar
USIM Card1-2	Options
General Information & Precautions	Security Codes 1-23
Inserting & Removing USIM Card	Phone Password
USIM PINs1-5	Center Access Code
Handset Parts & Functions         1-6           Handset         1-6	Network Password
Display Indicators	2 Basic Handset Operations
Battery & Charger1-11	Initiating a Call
Before Using Battery or Charger1-11	Receiving a Call2-3
Inserting & Removing Battery1-13	_
AC Charger	Reject Incoming Call 2-4
In-Car Charger (Optional)	Answer Machine 2-5
Power On/Off	Activating & Canceling
Power On	Ringing Duration
Power Off	Sound Language

Checking Recordings	Manner Profile
Engaged Call Operations2-7Earpiece Volume.2-7Hold.2-7	Changing Profile         3-3           Offline Mode         3-4
Speaker Phone.         .2-7           Voice Recording.         .2-7	4 Entering Text
Engaged Call Options	Text Entry
Call Log Records2-9Viewing Call Log Records2-9Calling from Call Log Records2-9	Text Entry Window       4-2         Changing Text Entry Mode       4-2         Key Assignments       4-3
Deleting Call Log Records	Entering Characters 4-4
Call Log Options	Hiragana/Kanji
Call Manager	Katakana
Data Counter, Call Costs, & Call Times2-11	Alphanumerics
Edit Cost Limit	Numbers
Display Call Cost during a Call	Symbols, Pictograms, & Emoticons
International Roaming2-13Changing Network Mode.2-13Network Setup.2-13	Quoting Saved Text 4-10 Hangul 4-11
Calling from Outside Japan2-14	Editing Text 4-11
Emergency Calls	Deleting         4-11           Copy/Cut, Paste & Undo         4-12
3 Manner Profile	Jump
Minding Mobile Manners3-2Manner Related Functions3-2	Learning On/Off (Japanese Only) 4-13

User Dictionary (Japanese Only)4-14	6 Video Call
Saving to User Dictionary	Before Using Video Call 6-2
SMS Templates	Initiating a Video Call 6-2
5 Phonebook	Receiving a Video Call
Saving to Phonebook	Engaged Video Call Options 6-5
Phonebook Entry Items.5-2Adding Entry Items.5-4Saving from Call Log Records.5-6	Video Call Settings6-5Sending Your Image6-5Selecting a Substitute Image6-6
Category Settings         5-7           New Category (USIM Card)         .5-7           Edit Category         .5-7	Retry Settings
Add Member	7 Mobile Camera
Using Phonebook5-9Calling from Phonebook.5-9Speed Dialing.5-12Phonebook Options.5-13	Before Using Mobile Camera7-2Mobile Camera Precautions7-2Using Display as Viewfinder7-2
<b>Editing Phonebook Entries</b>	Capturing a Still Image         7-3           Camera Mode         7-3           Capturing Still Images         7-4
Default Number	Capturing Video         7-10           Video Mode         7-10           Recording Video         7-10
My Phonebook Details	Mobile Camera Settings 7-12

Camera Settings         .7-12           Video Settings         .7-14	Greeting Messages 8-9  Display Language
Viewing Images7-15Viewing Still Images.7-15Viewing Videos.7-15	9 Sound Settings
Editing Still Images	Changing Profile Settings 9-2
Editing Video7-18 Create Flash®	10 Media Player
Attaching Images	Before Using Media Player 10-2
8 Display Settings	Playing Music10-3Playing Files from Playlists10-6
Standby Display Settings8-2Wallpaper8-2Clock Display8-4Operator Name8-5	Changing Music Player Settings       10-7         Repeat Mode       10-7         Tone Volume       10-7         Audio Skin       10-7         Visualization Mode       10-8
Menu Display       8-5         Menu Style       .8-5         Popup Menu       .8-6         List Font Size       .8-6         Zoom List       .8-7	Playing Video         10-9           Player Settings         10-11           Repeat Mode         10-11           Tone Volume         10-12           Resolution         10-12
Backlight Brightness & Duration8-7Adjusting Display Brightness8-7Backlight Duration8-7Dialing Display8-8	
5 1 7	

#### 11 Managing Files (Data Folder) Data Folder......11-2 Default Folders ......11-2 Using File Viewer.....11-5 Viewing Graphics/Animation with Setting Sound File as Ringtone.....11-11 Setting Flash® file as Wallpaper.....11-12 Saving a vFile ......11-12 Data Folder Options......11-13 Managing Files/Folders.....11-14 Changing a File Name/Folder Name......11-15

Inserting & Removing11-21Rename Memory Card11-22Memory Card Details11-23Format Memory Card11-23
12 External Connections
xternal Connections
luetooth <sup>®</sup>
Before Using Bluetooth®
Sending & Receiving Files
Connecting Handsfree Devices
Changing Bluetooth® Settings
SB Connection
Connecting to a PC
Connecting to a Printer
Mass storage
Connecting to a PC
Disconnecting from a PC

12 Committee	Auto Power On	14-4
13 Security	Calendar	14-5
Change Phone Password13-2	Displaying Calendar	
PIN	Saving New Entries to Calendar	14-12
PIN Lock       .13-3         Resetting PIN Lock       .13-3	Editing Calendar Entries	14-13
USIM Lock13-4	Voice Recorder	
Handset Security.13-5Phone Lock.13-5Password Lock.13-5Privacy Lock.13-6Activate Secret Mode.13-6Mobile Tracker.13-7Rejecting Incoming Calls.13-8Reject Unavailable.13-8Reject Unavailable.13-8	Voice Recorder Window Recording Voice Playing Voice Changing Voice Recorder Settings  World Clock Viewing World Clock Selecting Areas  Using Calculator	
Black List.13-9Restoring Defaults.13-10Clear Memory.13-10Master Reset.13-11	Converting Currencies or Units Converting Currencies	
14 Tools	Interpreter (Japanese Only)	
Alarms         14-2           Wake-up Alarm/Alarms         14-2	e.p.etc. (sapanese omy)	

#### 15 Advanced Functions Call Waiting\*..... 16-8 Handling Incoming Calls......15-5 Engaged Conference Call Operations . . . . . . . . . . . 16-10 Restrict Outgoing/Incoming Calls . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16-12 Changing Network Password . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 16-13 **16 Optional Services** 17 Receiving & Sending Messages Checking for New Messages . . . . . . . . . . . 17-2

viii

Creating Messages	Deleting a Message	18-9
Procedures	Deleting Specified Message(s)	
Address	Designating & Deleting a Mailbox	18-10
Subject	Deleting All Messages from a Mailbox	18-11
Message	Linked Information	
Sending a Message	Saving to Phonebook	
Slide Show	Saving as a Bookmark	
Changing the Style of Message Field	Initiating a Call, Sending a Message, or Access	-
Templates		18-12
Attaching/Inserting Files17-14	Using an Attachment	18-13
Attaching/Inserting a File from Data Folder, etc. into Message	Viewing an Attachment	
Field	Saving Attachments to Data Folder	18-14
Creating & Inserting a File17-18	Managing Folders	18-15
Saving Created Messages17-19	Create Folder	
Save to Drafts	Edit Folder	
Save as a Template	Security ON/OFF	
	Moving Messages	
18 Messaging Folders	Delete Folder	
Viewing Messages18-2	From Message List	
Message Lists	Saving to Phonebook	
Message Window Operations	Sorting Messages	
Replying to a Message	Move to Phone/Move to USIM	
	Saving an S! Mail Template	
Forwarding a Message	Message List Options	18-20
Sending from Drafts		
Sending from Unsent Messages 18-9		

19 Server Mail	Page Window Operations
Message List         19-2           Acquire Mail List         19-2	22 Mobile Internet Files
Download       .19-2         Delete       .19-3	Using Image Files
Remote Forward19-4	Wallpaper22-3
20 Other Message Settings	Using Sound Files         22-4           Playing Sound         22-4
Customizing Handset Address20-2	Saving Sound Files to Data Folder
S! Mail Settings20-2Sending Settings.20-2Receiving Settings.20-3	Using Video Files         22-6           Playing a Video         22-6           Saving Videos to Data Folder         22-6
Message Size	Streaming         22-7           Saving Pages         22-8
SMS Settings20-5	Saving a Page22-8
3D Pictogram Settings	Opening a Saved Page
nepry with text	Deleting a Saved Page
21 Mobile Internet	Saving Bookmarks
Getting Started         21-2           Getting Online         21-3           Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu         .21-3	Opening a Bookmark         22-10           Editing Bookmarks         22-10           Deleting a Bookmark         22-11
Enter URL	History

Display Settings         22-12           Rendering         .22-12	24 S! Appli
Search Text       .22-13         Copy Text       .22-13         Reload       .22-13         Page Details       .22-14         Send URL       .22-14         Server Certificate       .22-14         Returning to Default Page       .22-15         Encoding       .22-15         Information Window Options       .22-15	Getting Started       24-2         S! Appli       24-2         Network S! Appli       24-2         Downloading S! Appli       24-2         Starting S! Appli       24-3         Exit, Pause, & Resume       24-3         Exiting or Pausing S! Appli       24-3         Restarting a Paused S! Appli       24-4
23 Other Web Settings	Managing S! Appli         24-4           Details         24-4
Preferences	Lock/Unlock       24-4         Delete       24-5         mPet       24-5         Selecting Pet       24-5         mPet Operations       24-7
Text Size	Other Operations
Refresh Browser	Security         24-12           S! Appli Settings         24-13           Backlight         24-13           Application Volume         24-13           Vibration         24-14
	xi

S! Appli Sort	
25 Appendix	
Functions	
Software Update	25-10
Symbols & Pictograms	.25-12
Memory List	25-15
Specifications	25-15
INDEX	25-17
Warranty & After Sales Service	25-24
Customer Service	

# **About This Guide**

In this guide, 705SC refers to SoftBank 705SC. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

#### Screen Shots and 705SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual displays. Product illustrations may vary from actual products.

#### **Confirmations & Warning Messages**

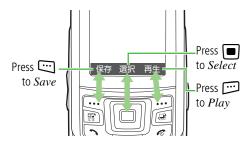
Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all confirmations and warning messages carefully.

## **Symbols**

In this guide, symbols represent 705SC keys; see "Handset Parts & Functions" (�P.1-6). Softkey and Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

### Softkeys

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display. Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



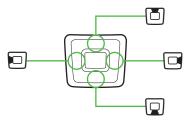
## **Softkey Operations**



#### **Multi Selector Operations**

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, and scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

#### **Basic Multi Selector Operations**



: Press or 📮

: Press or or

: Press 🗀 , 🔲 , 🗀 , or 🗔

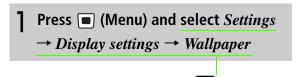
#### Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

## **Menu Operations**

Menu/Options operations are simplified with arrows.

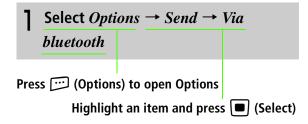
#### Main Menu



Highlight an item and press (Select)

For details, see "705SC Menus" (♠P.1-20).

#### **Options**



# **Safety Precautions**

- Read these safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe all precautions to avoid injury to yourself and others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

## **Before Using Handset**

## Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

<b>⚠</b> Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
<b>⚠</b> Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
<b> ∴</b> Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

	Prohibited Actions
0 6	Compulsory Actions
$\triangle$	Attention Required



## Handset, Battery, & Charger

# Use only specified battery and Charger (⊕P.i).



Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating, or bursting.

## Do not short-circuit Charger Port.



Keep metal objects away from the Charger Port.

Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak,
overheat, burst, or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry
handset.

#### **Battery**

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.



Eyes may be severely damaged.

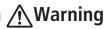
# Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage, or fire.



#### Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in a fire.
- Disassemble, modify, or break battery.
- Damage or solder on to battery.
- Use a damaged or deformed battery.
- Use a non-specified charger.
- Force battery into handset.

- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat (�P.i).
- Use battery for other equipments.



### Handset, Battery, & Charger

# Do not insert foreign objects into handset.



Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset or Charger. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.

# Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.



Fire or electric shock may occur.

## Keep handset away from liquidfilled containers.



Keep handset and Charger away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.

#### Avoid sources of fire.



To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

# Keep handset and Charger away from microwave ovens.



Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat, or ignite.

# Do not disassemble or modify handset.



- Do not open the housing of handset or Charger; it may cause electric shock or injury. Contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset or Charger. Fire or electric shock may result.

# Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.



Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents. Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission Record from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.

# If water or foreign matter gets inside handset:



Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

#### Do not subject handset to shocks.

Subjecting handset or Charger to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset break, remove battery and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

#### If an abnormality occurs:

Should there be any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug the Charger, and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

#### Handset

## **Preventing accidents**

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull
  over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is
  prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (Effective 1
  November 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle.
   Accidents may result.
- Do not turn the volume up so high that ambient sounds cannot be heard, especially when walking in or around traffic to avoid accidents.

## Do not swing handset by the strap.



Injury or breakage may result.

0.5

# Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.



Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

## **Ringtone & Vibration Settings**



Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or wear a pacemaker/defibrillator.

# During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.



There is a risk of a lightning strike or electric shock.

#### Do not use handset with wet hands.



Doing so may lead to electric shock or damage to 705SC.

# Charger

### Use only the specified voltage.



- Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.
- AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging handset abroad.
- In-Car Charger: DC 100V-240V Input

## Do not use step up/down transformers.



Use of the AC Charger with step up/down transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

# Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.



Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.

# Do not touch plug blades with wet hands.



Electric shock may occur.

# Do not use multiple cords in one outlet



Excess heat or fire may occurs.

Do not bend, twist, pull, or set objects on the cord. Do not put heavy objects on the cords or heat or pull the cords.



Fire or electric shock may result.

#### Do not short-circuit Charger Port.



Keep the metal away from Port. Overheating, fire, or electric shock may result.

# Keep Charger out of the reach of children.



Electric shock or injury may occur.

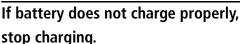
# Do not use AC/In-Car Charger if the cord is damaged.



Fire or electric shock may be caused. Contact the SoftBank Customer Assistance to replace the cord.

#### **Battery**







Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.

## Be sure to secure In-Car Charger.



Avoid injury or accidents.

# 9

# If there is leakage or abnormal odor, avoid fire sources.



It may catch fire or burst.

#### **During thunderstorms:**



Unplug the Charger to avoid damage, fire, or electric shock.

## If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration, or distortion, remove battery from handset.



It may leak, overheat, or explode.

## Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

## People with implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.



Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

# Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators may be near.



Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

# Observe these rules inside medical facilities:



- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.

- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.

Consult the manufacturer of other electronic medical equipment about radio wave effects.





#### Handset, Battery, & Charger

#### **Handset Care**



- Place 705SC on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep 705SC away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage, or burnout.
- Keep 705SC away from direct sunlight (Inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration, or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep 705SC out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 705SC away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

## **Usage Environment**



- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using 705SC on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 705SC away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

#### xxiv

#### Handset

# Avoid leaving 705SC in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).



Handset may heat up and lead to burns.

## **Volume settings**



Keep handset volume moderate.

Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.

#### Headphones



- Do not unplug by pulling the cord; may damage the cord.
- Keep the plug clean to avoid noise or malfunction.

#### Inside vehicles:



Handset use may cause other electronic equipment to malfunction.

# Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.



Skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness may result depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing	PC
Keypad	PET + Urethane
Multi Selector	Clear PC + Film +
	Urethane
Earpiece/Speaker Ornament	Bronze/Cr3+
	coating, PC(Black)
Charger & External Device Port Cover, Memory Card Slot Cover	PC + Urethane/UV
Battery Cover	PC + GF20%
Battery Cover Lock	PC/UV
Mirror	ABS/Cr3+ coating
Camera Key, Side keys	PC + Urethane/UV

## Charger

#### **Charger & In-Car Charger**

• Grasp the plug (not the cord) to disconnect Charger. Otherwise, fire or electric shock may result.



- Keep the cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if the plug is hot or improperly connected. Fire or electric shock may result.



• Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. If might overheat and cause injury.



#### Use only the specified fuse

A 1A fuse is specified for In-Car Charger. An improper fuse may cause damage or fire.



## Always charge 705SC in a wellventilated area.



Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage or fire.

## Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.



Start engine before use; may weaken car battery.

## **Disconnect AC/In-Car Charger** during long periods of disuse.



Be sure to unplug AC/In-Car Charger after use.

#### **Handset Maintenance**



When cleaning, disconnect AC/In-Car Charger to prevent shock or injury.

## **Installing In-Car Charger**



Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



### **Battery**

# Keep battery out of the reach of children.



They may sustain injuries. And when using, do not let them remove battery from handset.

# Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.



Overheating or fire may occur and performance may be reduced.

#### Do not expose battery to liquids.



Performance may deteriorate.

# If battery fluid makes contact with skin or clothes:



Rinse with clean water immediately.

# Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.



Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a SoftBank shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

## Do not throw or abuse battery.



Battery may overheat, burst, or ignite.

# Charge battery within a range of $5^{\circ}C - 40^{\circ}C$



Battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

# If a child is using handset, explain all these instructions and supervise handset's usage.



If there is any abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not leave battery uncharged. Charge at least once every six months.



## **General Notes**

#### **General Use**

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- Beware of eavesdropping.
   Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly

reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

#### **Eavesdropping**

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

#### **Inside Vehicles**

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

#### **Aboard Aircraft**

Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off).

Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

#### **Function Usage Limits**

- These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications.
- After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

#### **Handset Care**

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost.
   SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C 40°C.
- Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.

- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - · Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - · Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - · Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.

- · Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.
- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery.
   If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

## Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in 705SC is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

#### **Trademarks**

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  - 4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338
- •S! Appli and Mail Art are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK," SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are

- trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s
   NetFront Internet browser software.
   NetFront is a trademark or registered
   trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.
   A@@ESS NetFront\*
- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR

- (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPFG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/ OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE, ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.
- Contains Macromedia<sup>®</sup> Flash<sup>®</sup> Flash Lite<sup>™</sup> technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

- Copyright<sup>©</sup> 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- JBlend<sup>™</sup> is incorporated in this product.
   JBlend<sup>™</sup> is a Java<sup>™</sup> execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.
- Powered by JBlend<sup>™</sup> Technology.
   JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix
   Corporation in Japan and other countries.

- Powered by JBlend<sup>™</sup>, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.
   All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta<sup>®</sup> and Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup> are registered trade marks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- microSD<sup>™</sup> is a trademark of SD Association.



 Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

#### Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of 705SC, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1.Before using Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.

- 2.In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
- 3.If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

#### **Contact: SoftBank Customer Center**

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (�P.25-25) for landline numbers by service area.

705SC transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

#### **SAR Certification Information**

705SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2W/ kg\*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 705SC is 0.574 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm

ARIB: http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html

\*The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.).

# Getting Started

#### USIM Card

### General Information & Precautions

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use 705SC; turn 705SC power off to insert/remove USIM Card.



Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

 Avoid using excessive force when Inserting/removing USIM Card.

- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

#### Notes

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or 705SC with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (P.25-25) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®,
   S! Appli, or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.

#### Inserting & Removing USIM Card

Always turn power off before opening 705SC to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

#### Inserting

- Remove battery (⊕P.1-14)
- **2** With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot



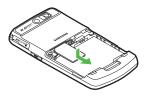
## **3** Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



#### Removing

Remove battery (⊕P.1-14)

2 Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



#### Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or 705SC.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when Inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.

#### 9

#### **USIM PINs**

USIM Card features two (4- to 8-digit) security codes: PIN and PIN2.

#### PIN

Use PIN to prevent unauthorized use of 705SC by others.

- Modify PIN (◆P.13-2).
- When PIN lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time 705SC is turned on or whenever USIM Card is reinserted ( P.13-3).

#### PIN<sub>2</sub>

PIN2 is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

• Modify PIN2 (◆P.13-2).

#### Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

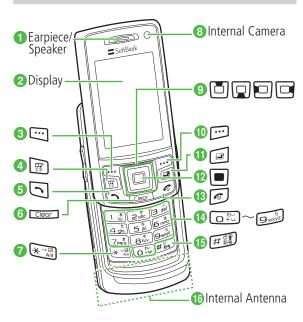
Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits 705SC function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock. For more information, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25).

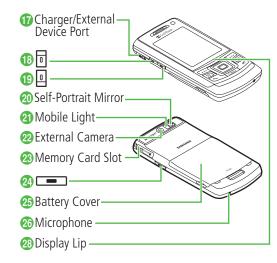
#### Note

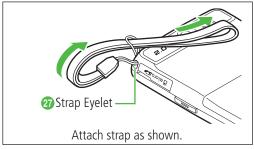
- Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates 705SC. Write down PUK and PUK2.
- Unlocking a locked USIM Card requires a special procedure. Contact Customer Service (♠P.25-25).

#### Handset Parts & Functions

#### Handset







- 1 Earpiece/Speaker
- ② Display
- 8 Left Softkey/Mail Key

Open Messaging menu or execute Left Softkey command/ function.

4 Media Player/Character Key

Activate Media Player or select text entry mode.

Start Key

Initiate and receive Voice Calls.

6 Clear/Back Key

Delete entered text or return to the previous window.

★ Key

Enter line breaks in text entry windows. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to open Phone Profiles.

(3) Internal Camera

Used for capturing your own image or for Video Calls.

Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window.

nght Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key

Access Yahoo! Keitai or execute Right Softkey command/ function. 11 Switch Bar Key

Display Switch Bar (♦ P.1-22).

(2) Center Key

Open Main Menu or execute Center Softkey command/function.

**(B)** Power/End Key

Turn power on/off or end operations.

Keypad

Enter numbers or characters and select menu items.

15 #/Manner Key

Toggle Symbols menus in text entry windows. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Profile.

- (f) Internal Antenna
- (17) Charger/External Device Port

Connect Charger, Stereo Earphone Microphone, USB Cable, etc. here.

(Side Key)

Raise volume. Alternatively, enlarge the image during a Video Call.

19 (Side Key)

Lower volume. During a Video Call, reduce image size.

20 Self-Portrait Mirror

Used for capturing your own image with External Camera.

4 Mobile Light

Used for capturing images in poor lighting conditions.

22 External Camera

Capture images or send video during a Video Call.

Memory Card Slot

Insert Memory Card.

Camera Key
Activate Camera or release shutter.

**Battery Cover**Opened to insert/remove battery or USIM Card.

4 Microphone

Strap Eyelet

#### Tip

#### • Internal Antenna

705SC has no external antenna. 705SC transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna. Voice quality may vary by where/how 705SC is used.

#### **Opening & Closing 705SC**

Use Display Lip to slide Display portion up/down as shown.



#### Tip

• Backlight

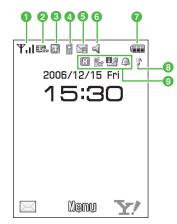
Display backlight goes out then turns off as set in *Backlight time*; response varies by function in use.

• When 705SC is closed

#### Note

 Make sure 705SC is completely open or closed; use in other positions may cause malfunction/injury.

#### Display Indicators



1 Y<sub>II</sub> Signal Strength (more bars <sub>II</sub> indicate stronger signal)

Out Out-of-Range (outside service area or no signal when *Language* is set to *English* or 한국어) 圏外Out-of-Range (When *Language* is set to 日本語)

- 2 = 3G (UMTS) network connected/roaming
  - GSM network connected/roaming
  - Web SSL connected
- (Blue) Bluetooth® Active
  - ☑ (Flashing in Blue & Pink) Bluetooth® Transmission
  - Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Packet Data transmission
  - R Call in Progress with Bluetooth® Active
  - (Blue) USB Connected
  - (Flashing in Orange & Yellow) USB Active

  - S! Appli Paused
  - ♠ Packet Data transmission
- ← I Voice Call in Progress
  - Video Call in Progress
  - Reypad Lock Set
- - № New SMS
  - Unheard Voice Mail
  - Unheard Answer Machine Message
  - Memory Card inserted
  - Software Update Required
- 6 Normal Profile

- Manner Profile
- Car Profile
- Meeting Profile
- \* Outdoor Profile
- Gffline Mode
- 7 💷 Battery Strong
  - Battery Moderate
  - Battery Low
  - (Flashing) Battery Weak (Charge Now)
- Sound settings: Other than Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
  - Sound settings: Other than Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set; and Off for Voice Call in Vibration Set
  - Sound settings: Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
  - ✓ Sound settings: Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set and Vibration Set

- - Le Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Active
  - Answer Machine Active
  - S! Mail Memory Full
  - SMS Memory Full
  - Woice Mail Memory Full
  - Wake-up Alarm/Alarm Set

#### Tip

 When \( \gamma\) (Red) appears, only packet data transmission and S! Mail sending are available;
 Voice Call, received S! Mail notification, and SMS sending/receiving are disabled.

#### Battery & Charger

#### Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of 705SC or after periods of disuse.

#### **Charging Battery**

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge.
- 705SC uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in any state without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
  - Where the ambient temperature is below 5°C or above 40°C
  - Where there are high levels of humidity, vibrations or dust
  - Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- 705SC or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact Customer Service (◆P.25-25).
- Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

#### Note

- Use specified Charger only.
- Battery must be inside 705SC to charge it.
- When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

#### **Battery Life**

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
  - Storing/using 705SC in places with ambient temperature or above 5°C below 40°C
  - Using 705SC in when signal is poor/leaving it on outof-range
  - Allowing debris to collect on 705SC, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
  - Active S! Appli
  - Camera use
  - Media Player use

- Excessive Keypad use (e.g. for gaming or messaging, etc.)
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> transmissions
- Frequently opening and closing 705SC
- Settings
  - Using Slide Show
  - Setting Brightness higher or Backlight Time longer
  - Using Media Player with Backlight set to Always on

#### **Battery Disposal**

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

#### When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and 705SC beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise 705SC will automatically turn off.

#### 9

#### **Inserting & Removing Battery**

#### **Inserting**

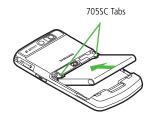
Slide Tab over and lift up Battery
Cover as shown



**2** Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



3 Align Battery Slots and 705SC Tabs to insert battery as shown



## 4 Insert Battery Cover Tabs into 705SC Slots as shown



#### Note

- Remove battery cover with care; stress on tabs may damage them.
- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging 705SC tabs.

#### Removing

Always turn 705SC off before removing battery. Never remove battery while AC Charger or In-Car Charger is connected.

## Slide Tab over and lift up Battery Cover as shown



#### **>** Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



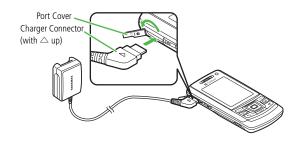
#### **3** Lift battery up and remove as shown



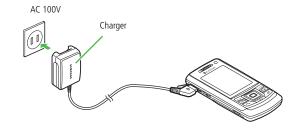
#### AC Charger

Use specified Charger only.

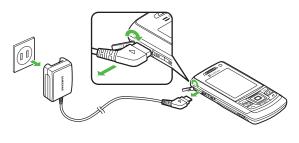
## Open Port Cover and insert Charger Connector into the port



#### 2 Plug Charger into an AC 100V outlet



## 3 When battery is charged, unplug Charger from outlet, then from 705SC



#### Tip

#### Battery Charged Confirmation

When 705SC is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator flashes when battery is fully charged. While charging, battery indicators change as follows:

flashes when battery is fully charged.

When 705SC is off, charging battery animation and *Charging*... appear. When battery is fully charged, full battery graphics and *Battery full* appear.

#### Charging Time

An empty battery requires 130 minutes (approx.) to charge when power on and Display off (no operation). Longer when Display on. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

#### **☐** Charging via PC USB Port

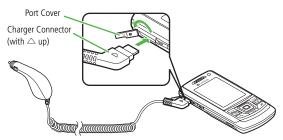
Battery will charge when 705SC is connected to a PC via included USB cable.

- (1) Open Port Cover and insert USB Cable Connector
- (2) Insert USB Connector into a PC USB port
- (3) When battery is charged, remove Connector from 705SC and replace Port Cover, then remove USB Connector from the PC USB port

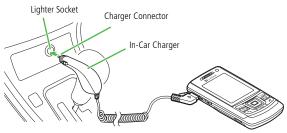
Charging via USB takes more time; charging time will vary by PC. A weak battery may not charge via a PC USB port.

#### In-Car Charger (Optional)

#### **Open Port Cover and insert Connector**

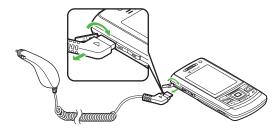


## 2 Insert Charger Connector into lighter socket



3 Start the car's engine

4 When battery is charged, remove In-Car Charger Connector, replace Port Cover, then remove Charger Connector from lighter socket



#### Tip

- Battery Charged Confirmation (�P.1-16)
- Charging Time (P.1-16)
- When using In-Car Charger
   See In-Car Charger manual. For safety, use In-Car Holder together with In-Car Charger.

#### Note

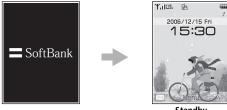
- Do not charge battery in ambient temperatures over 40°C (e.g. inside a closed automobile in direct sunlight, etc.).
- Use In-Car Charger in cars with minus-earth only (DC 12/24V).

#### Power On/Off

Power On

**]** Open 705SC

**2** Press for 1+ seconds



Standby

#### Tip

- To confirm handset phone number In Standby, press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  ; save or edit your information in My Phonebook Details including name and mail address (P.5-16).
- When PIN lock is activated PIN entry is required each time 705SC is turned on.
- When 705SC is left open without operations Display automatically shuts down to conserve power.

#### Note

 Gently slide front face to open and close 705SC; avoid using excessive force which could damage handset or lead to malfunctions.

#### **Power Off**

Press for 2+ seconds

#### Time & Date

#### Time & Date

- Default Setting Time format: 24H
  - Date format: YYYY/MM/DD

Some 705SC functions cannot be used unless time and date are set. Open Time & Date to change Time Format or Date Format.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Phone settings  $\rightarrow$  Time & date
- Adjust settings

#### To set time

Highlight Time field and enter the time (24-hour format)

#### To set AM/PM (for 12-hour format)

1) Highlight Time field and press twice for AM/ PM option

② Use 🗖 to toggle AM and PM

#### To set date

Highlight Date field and enter year, month, and day

#### To change time format

- 1) Select Time format field
- 2 Select the setting and press

#### To change date format

- (1) Select Date format field
- 2 Select the setting and press
- 3 Press (Save)

#### Time Zone Updating

Default Setting Prompt first

Automatically update 705SC Date & Time using server time zone information.

## 2 Select *Time zone updating* and perform operations to set

3 Press 🚾 (Save)

#### Tip

• Time zone updating Items

Manual only: Enter date & time manually. Prompt first: Confirmation appears when 705SC moves into a different time zone. This function is not available Japan.

*Automatic*: Time & Date updated according to server time zone information. This function is not available Japan.

#### **Changing Home Time Zone**

Default Setting Home zone: GMT+9h

Daylight saving: Unchecked

Select the zone closest to your locality. Set Daylight saving time as required.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Phone settings  $\rightarrow$  Time & date
- Select Home zone field
- Set time zone

To set home time zone

- 1) Use to specify a target area
- (2) Press

To set daylight saving time

- (1) Check *Daylight saving*
- 2 Press (OK)
- Press ::: (Save)

#### 705SC Menus

#### Main Menu

In Standby, press (Menu)

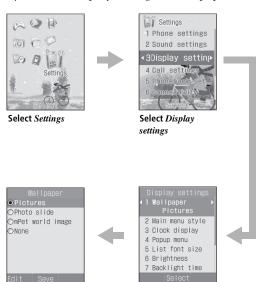


Main Menu

→ Highlight an item and press 
→ (Select)

## 3 Repeat Step 2 to open/activate the target function

<Example> Select *Display settings* → *Wallpaper* 



Wallpaper Setup Window appears Select Wallpaper

Pictures

#### Tip

#### • To end an operation

Press . Operation ends and 705SC returns to Standby. When multiple functions are active, the next active operation window appears.

#### • To cancel/escape an operation

Press . Operation/function is canceled and 705SC returns to Standby or the previous window appears. For some menus, a confirmation appears.

Menu operations (◆P.xiv)

#### ⊕ When Popup Menu (�P.8-6) is On

Content is different (Step 2), however operations remain the same.

#### ➡ Selecting items with Keypad

When numbered items appear in menus, etc., use keypad to select them.

#### Shortcuts

In Standby, press a key to open the assigned shortcut.

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
	Messaging
□( <b>Y</b> !)	Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
(1+ seconds)	Yahoo! Keitai Menu
京	Music Playlists
(1+ seconds)	Music Player (last played track plays)
	Switch Bar
	Idle shortcut*
	Phonebook list
	Call Log ( <i>Received</i> )
	Call Log ( <i>Dialled</i> )
0	Call Log (Current Contacts)
(1+ seconds)	Phone Profiles
# # BB (1+ seconds)	Activate/Cancel Manner Profile

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
	Mobile Camera (last used function)
(1+ seconds)	Mobile Carriera (last used function)

<sup>\*</sup> Create shortcuts for frequently used functions in Idle shortcut (②P.15-8).

#### Switch Bar

Initiate *Call*, *Messaging*, *Yahoo! Keitai*, or *Media Player*; use multiple functions concurrently (e.g., create a message while listening to music, or browse the Mobile Internet while talking on the phone).



In Standby or an active function window, press

## 2 Use to highlight a function and press (Select)

#### To exit an active function

From the window of the function to exit, press

#### To exit all active functions

- 1 Press
- ② Use to highlight *End all?* and press

(Yes)

#### Tip

#### . When exiting all active functions

Exiting all active functions during message creation or voice/ video recording deletes created/recorded data.

#### Options

When *Options* appears at bottom-right of Display, press to open *Options*. To execute an option, highlight the item and press (Select).

#### Tip

• See "Options" (♥P.xiv)

#### Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use 705SC.

#### Phone Password

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) required to use/change some handset functions.

- Entered digits are represented with\*
- If incorrect, an error message appears; try again.
- Change Phone Password as required

#### Center Access Code

The 4-digit number specified at subscription; required to access Voice Mail via landlines/to subscribe to fee-based information.

Center Access Code cannot be changed on 705SC; a special procedure is required. For details, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25).

#### Network Password

The 4-digit number selected at initial subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering Network Password incorrectly three consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25).

 Network Password can be changed on 705SC (◆P.16-13).

#### Note

- Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password. If you forget any of these codes contact Customer Service (◆P.25-25).
- Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damages caused by misuse of these codes by others.

## Basic Handset Operations

#### 🗾 Initiating a Call

See P.5-9 to call from a Phonebook entry or P.6-2 for Video Calls.

To use Speed Dialing (♥P.5-12)

**2** Confirm the number and press

3 Press 🕝 to end the call

#### Tip

To correct entered digits

Press Clear to delete the last digit. Press Clear for 1+ seconds to delete all.

• When the line is busy

Press to end the call and try again later. If Auto Redial is active, number is automatically redialed. Press (Cancel) or to cancel.

- When Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected Enter a number and press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to initiate a call. When *Earphone call* is *On*, press switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. Press switch for 1+ seconds to end a call.
- Engaged Call Operations (€P.2-7)

#### ➡ Placing international calls from Japan

A separate subscription is required for international calls.

- 1 Enter a phone number
- (2) Options → International dial
- 3 Select country or Enter Code for direct entry
- Select Japan
- (5) Confirm the number and press
- □ Using a SoftBank handset overseas Enter handset phone number; country code is not required.
- ☐ Calling from overseas (♠P.2-14)

#### Options

Item	Description
Video call	Initiate a Video Call.
Add to Phonebook	Save a number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (�P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the number (�P.17-6).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Call log	Open Call Log.
International dial	Add international code and country code to a number (�P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Hide or show your phone number when placing calls; select <i>None</i> to apply Caller ID settings.

#### Receiving a Call

- When 705SC rings/vibrates, press or (Accept)
- 2 Press ot to end the call

#### Tip

- When Anykey Answer is *On*Press any key except :, , , or Side Key to answer Voice Calls.
- To mute ringer for an incoming call
  While 705SC rings/vibrates, press (Mute); caller continues to hear ringback tone. To answer the call, press (Accept).
- To adjust ringer volume

  While 705SC rings/vibrates, press Side Key or or or ...
- When Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected When 705SC rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept a call. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.
- Engaged Call Operations (�P.2-7)

#### Ringtones

Specify ringtones for saved numbers by Phonebook entry or Category (♠P.5-4, 5-7). When no ringtone is set, 705SC rings according to Profile Settings ( P.9-2).

Under following conditions, 705SC rings according to each Mode; Secret Mode is set to Hide and Phonebook(contains caller's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to On.

#### Incoming call window

If caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears; if saved in Phonebook, name appears. When an image is set in Phonebook or Category, image also appears (\$P.5-4, 5-7). If caller hides Caller ID, Withheld appears. Under following conditions, no name/image appears; Secret

Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook(contains caller's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to On.

#### 

After an unanswered incoming call, Missed call window appears. Press (View), to open Missed Call Log (P.2-9).

#### ➡ When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding/Voice Mail to forward incoming calls to a specified number automatically/to save messages at Voice Mail Center. When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set to No *reply*, press (Busy) to forward an incoming call immediately (♦ P.16-3, 16-5).

Use Answer Machine to record caller messages. Up to 3 messages (15 seconds per message) can be recorded in 705SC (♠P.2-5).

#### Reject Incoming Call

Proactively disconnect an incoming call without answering it. The rejected call is recorded in *Missed*.

While 705SC rings/vibrates, press



#### Tip

- When Side Key is set to *Reject*Press or or for 1+ seconds to reject an incoming call.
- To reject call and send a busy message
  When neither Call Forwarding (♠P.16-2) nor Voice Mail
  (♠P.16-2) is active, press ::: (Busy) to proactively
  disconnect a call without answering it; "busy" message
  appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If
  caller's handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.
- To automatically reject a call (♠P.13-8)

#### Answer Machine

Record caller messages on handset. Up to 3 messages (15 seconds per message) can be recorded.

#### Activating & Canceling

#### Default Setting Off

- **>** Select the setting and press **■** (Save)

#### lote

- Answer Machine cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline mode. Use Voice Mail to record caller messages.
- If 705SC shared memory (◆P.25-15) is below 600 KB, Answer Machine cannot be used.

#### **⊞** With Answer Machine set

In Standby, 🗪 appears.

#### Ringing Duration

Default Setting = 10 seconds

- **2** Select an item or *Other* to set a time
- 3 Press (Save)

#### Sound Language

Default Setting ■日本語

- **>** Select the setting and press (Save)

#### Checking Recordings

When Answer Machine records caller messages, explanation appears in Display.

- Highlight the message to check and press (Play)

#### Tip

To delete messages

Highlight the message to delete, press (Delete) and select *Yes*.

#### Engaged Call Operations

#### Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece or Earphone volume. Setting remains even after power off.

During a call, press Side Key 🛭 or 🖳

#### Hold

When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice.

A subscription to Call Waiting (♠P.16-8) or Conference
Call (♠P.16-9) is required to use this function.

- During a call, press (Hold)
- Press (Retrieve) to reconnect the call

#### Speaker Phone

During a call, press () and select *Yes* 

To cancel Speaker Phone
Press ( ) ( )

#### Voice Recording

Record voice of a maximum of 2 minutes during a call.

- During a call, press for 1+ seconds
- 2 Press (Record)

#### **3** Perform operations to stop/pause

#### To stop and save

Press (Stop)

#### To pause and save

- 1) Press (Pause)
- ② Press (Record) to restart recording; press (Save) to end recording

#### Tip

- When a recording is made
   Files are saved to Sounds & Ringtones folder in Data Folder.
- When another call arrives while recording

  If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops and incoming
  call window appears.
- When call is ended while recording

  Recording stops automatically and voice file is saved.

#### Engaged Call Options

Item	Description
Whisper on/off	With <i>On</i> , raise the volume of sent sounds.
Mute	Check <i>Voice</i> or <i>Key tone</i> and press (OK) to cancel sending no sounds or key tones.
New call	Enter a number and press (Call) to initiate another call; requires subscription to Conference Call (P.16-9).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (◆P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the number (�P.17-6).
Send DTMF	Enter digits then press (Send).
Record	Record caller's voice during a call (�P.2-7).
Memo	Create and save text memos (◆P.14-10).
End call	Disconnect call.

ltem	Description
	Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use. Select headset or phone (handset).

#### Call Log Records

#### Viewing Call Log Records

Current contacts	All incoming and outgoing calls
Missed	All missed incoming calls
Received	All received incoming calls
Dialled	All outgoing calls

Press 🗔

Use to select a Call Log

**To confirm phone number and call duration** Highlight an item and press (View)

□ Call Log Record Indicators

saved in Phonebook

: Call to/from a number saved in USIM Card Phonebook

: Voice Call to/from an unsaved number

: Video Call to/from a number saved in Phonebook Current Contacts (all incoming/outgoing calls) Indicators

🖫 : Received call - 🧏 : Rejected incoming call

- ☐ : Missed call ☐ : Dialled call

#### Tip

While Secret Mode is set to Hide
 Call Log records of numbers saved in Secret Phonebook entries do not appear.

#### Calling from Call Log Records

Press 🗖

2 Use 🗖 to select a Call Log

3 Highlight a record and press 🕤

To initiate a Video Call

 $Options \rightarrow Video\ call$ 

#### Deleting Call Log Records

#### **Deleting One Record**

Delete one Call Log record.

Press 🗖

2 Use 🗖 to select a Call Log

3 Highlight a record, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes* 

#### Tip

- To delete individual calls from records
  - (1) Perform Steps 1 and 2
  - (View)
  - ③ Highlight a call, select Options → Delete → Selected → Yes

#### **Deleting All Records**

Delete all Call Log records at once.

Press 🖂

Use to select *Current contacts* 

**2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Delete*  $\rightarrow$  *All*  $\rightarrow$  *Yes* 

3 Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)

#### Call Log Options

Item	Description
Voice call	Initiate a Voice Call to the current number.
Video call	Initiate a Video Call to the current number (�P.2-9).
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (�P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the current number (◆P.17-6).

Item	Description
Delete	Delete the current Call Log record (�P.2-10).
Add to reject list	Add the number to Black List ( P.13-9).
View phonebook details	Open Entry details for a number.
International dial	Add international code and country code to the number (�P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Hide or show your phone number when placing calls; select <i>None</i> to apply Caller ID settings.

#### 🞜 Call Manager

Data counter	Confirm/reset incoming/outgoing data volume.
Call costs	Confirm/reset Total Costs, Last Call Cost or Cost Limit; change Call Costs currency unit.
Call times	Confirm/reset incoming/outgoing Voice/ Video Call Times.

## Data Counter, Call Costs, & Call Times

- Press (Menu) and select Settings  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Call manager
- **>** Select an item

#### To reset a Data Counter item

- 1 In Data counter, highlight an item, select *Options* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Reset
- ② Select Yes

#### To reset all Data Counter items

- 1 In Data counter, highlight an item, select *Options* 
  - → Reset all
- ② Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm), and select *Yes*

#### To reset Call Costs

- ① In Call Costs, select  $Options \rightarrow Reset \ call \ cost$
- 2 Enter PIN2 and press (Confirm)

#### To reset Call Times

① In Call Times, highlight an item, select *Options*→ *Reset* → *Yes* 

#### To reset all Call Times

- 1 In Call Times, highlight an item, select Options
  - → Reset all
- ② Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)

  → Yes

#### To change Call Costs currency unit

- ① In Call Costs, select  $Options \rightarrow Setup \ currency$
- ② Enter PIN2 and press (Confirm)
- (3) Highlight Price field to enter a price in Yen
- 4 Highlight Currency field and enter currency unit.
- (Save)

#### Edit Cost Limit

After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls (�P.2-15) can be initiated; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled.

- **>** Select *Call costs*
- **3** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit cost limit* 
  - 4 Enter PIN2 and press (Confirm)
- 5 Enter limit

#### Display Call Cost during a Call

Default Setting = On

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

#### 🞜 International Roaming

A separate subscription is required for international calls. Contact Customer Service for more information about international roaming.

#### Changing Network Mode

Default Setting = 3G

- 2 Select the setting

#### Tip

• Network mode Items

Automatic: Network is set automatically by location.

GSM 900/1800: Available overseas.

GSM 1900: Available overseas.

*3G*: Available domestically and overseas.

#### Network Setup

#### Selecting a Network

Default Setting = Automatic

Select a network (operator) by location or use Automatic.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*→ *Connectivity* → *Network selection*
- 2 Select the setting

To select automatically

Select Automatic

#### To select a specific network

- (1) Select *Manual*
- (2) Select a network

#### **Preferred Networks**

Insert networks into Preferred Networks list or add them to the end. Select networks from Network List or create new network entries.

- Press (Menu) and select Settings

  → Connectivity → Preferred networks
- Edit Preferred Networks

To insert/add a network from Network List

- (1) When inserting, highlight insert position
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Insert or Add  $\rightarrow$  Network list
- (Insert/Add)

To insert/add a new network

- 1) When inserting, highlight insert position
- **(2)** *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Insert* or  $Add \rightarrow New \ network$
- ③ Enter network settings and press [:::] (Insert/Add)

#### To delete a network from Preferred Networks

Highlight network to delete, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

New Network Settings				
	Country code	Up to 3 digits		
	Network code Up to 3 digits			
	<b>Network name</b> Up to 20 single-byte alphanumeric			
	Network type	GSM or 3G		

#### Calling from Outside Japan

To call an in-country landline or mobile phone
Proceed to Step 5

#### To enter country code, etc. directly

Press for 1+ seconds to enter +, enter country code and phone number omitting the first 0 (except when calling landlines in Italy) and proceed to Step 5

- **?** Select *Options* → *International dial*
- **3** Select country or *Enter Code* for direct entry
- 4 Select *Abroad*
- **5** Confirm number and press

#### Tip

 To change/add International code or country code (◆P.15-2)

#### Emergency Calls

Some emergency numbers (110 (Police), 119 (Fire), etc.) are available even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

705SC Status	Available Numbers
Offline mode (�P.3-4) is active.	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (�P.2-12).	110, 119, 118
705SC is locked ( <b>◆</b> P.13-5).	None
Required PIN not entered (◆P.13-3).	None
USIM Card cannot be authenticated (◆P.13-4).	None
Outgoing Call Barring (�P.16-11) is active.	110, 119, 118

#### Note

 SoftBank can not guarantee connections in all countries and regions. Handset operations may vary by network, signal, or function settings.

## Manner Profile

#### Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using 705SC.

- Turn 705SC off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep 705SC off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
- Refrain from using 705SC in places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

#### **Manner Related Functions**

705SC offers two manner-related profiles.

#### **Manner Profile**

Silence 705SC sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner Profile.

#### Offline Mode

Temporarily suspend 705SC transmissions; other 705SC functions may still be used while Offline Mode is active.

Muting/vibrating 705SC can be selected respectively for alert tone, ringtone, or alarm in Sound settings other than Manner Profile/Offline Mode.

#### Manner Profile

In Standby, press # for 1+ seconds

#### Tip

- When Manner Profile is active
  - appears.
- Even when Manner Profile is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.

#### Changing Profile

705SC features five Profiles, including Manner Profile.

- In Standby, press 🗺 for 1+ seconds
- **>** Select a Profile
- 3 Press (Save)

#### Tip

To change 705SC Profile (♠P.9-2)

#### ☐ Profiles

Select a Profile by usage and edit settings as required ( P.9-2).

Profile	Description
◄ Normal	Normal sounds produced by 705SC
Manner	No sounds produced by 705SC
<b>ℰ</b> Car	Set Automatic reception of Voice Calls and activation of Speaker Phone for use while driving
<b>Additional</b> Meeting	Ringtone or Key tone preset to Vibration or Mute
♣ Outdoor	Ringtone or Key tone preset to maximum sound volume

#### Offline Mode

Default Setting = Off

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Offline mode
- **2** Select the setting and press (Save)

Tip

• When 705SC is turned off while *Offline mode* is active

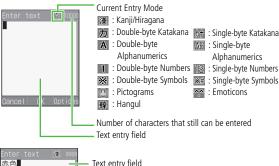
Offline mode activation confirmation appears the next time 705SC is turned on. Press (No) for Normal Profile.

# Entering Text

#### Text Entry

Enter kanji/hiragana/hangul, single- or double-byte katakana, alphanumerics, or symbols/pictograms/emoticons.

#### **Text Entry Window**



赤色 Text entry field Suggestions\* Japanese kana conversion alternatives ってかだね だけど から

\* Suggestions appear only in Kanji/Hiragana mode, when Prediction setting is *On*.

#### Number Only Text Entry Fields

Text entry windows do not appear for Phonebook Phone fields or Alarm Time fields; enter numbers directly.

#### **Changing Text Entry Mode**

Text Entry modes may be limited in some text entry fields or windows.

#### In a text entry window, press



#### Highlight entry mode and press \



#### Tip

#### To toggle symbols

In text entry windows, press # to toggle Symbols, Pictograms, and Emoticons.

#### Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
1 35	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ 1	アイウエオァィゥェォ 1	.@/: <sup>~1</sup> ]	1
2 abc	かきくけこ2	カキクケコ2	abcABC2	2
3 def	さしすせそ3	サシスセソ3	defDEF3	3
4. ghi	たちつてとっ 4	タチツテトッ 4	ghiGHI4	4
5 ½l	なにぬねの5	ナニヌネノ5	jklJKL5	5
[5 m <sup>12</sup> ]	はひふへほ6	ハヒフへホ6	mnoMNO6	6
Zpgrs	まみむめも7	マミムメモ7	pgrsPQRS7	7
8tuv	やゆよゃゅょ8	ヤユヨャュョ8	tuvTUV8	8
9wxyz	らりるれろ9	ラリルレロ9	wxyzWXYZ9	9
0+u	わをんゎ、。 $-\cdot\sim$ !? $\langle Space \rangle 0$		!? (Space) 0	0
<b>X</b> "∘ □ A/a	<ul> <li>Toggle upper/lower-case; add " / " to unfixed, convertible kana</li> <li>Enter Line Break</li> </ul>		Toggle upper/lower-case     Enter Line Break	Enter Line Break
# ES	<ul> <li>Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection</li> <li>Toggle Pictograms, Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols, Emoticons</li> </ul>			Toggle Pictograms, Double- byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols, Emoticons

<sup>1</sup> When double-byte, "~" cannot be used ("∼"appears on Display). 2 Single-byte "¬ " (lower case) cannot be entered.

#### 

Answer incoming calls without saving text first; disconnect call to return to text entry window. Similarly, close Alarm window to return to text entry window.

#### Entering Characters

#### Hiragana/Kanji

Enter hiragana/kanji with or without conversion predictions. When Prediction setting is *On*, Suggestions appear below text entry window.

## Activate Kanji/Kana entry mode to enter hiragana



#### To add or or

Enter a valid character and press

#### To correct a misentry

Use to delete the character then enter the correction

#### When key is pressed too many times

Press # to return to the previous character assigned to the same key

## To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press to move cursor to the right

#### To enter unconverted hiragana

Press (Confirm)

#### **2** Convert hiragana

#### To select a conversion from Suggestions

- 1 Press to move between Suggestions
- 2 Highlight a conversion and press (Confirm)



#### When target conversion does not appear

- 1 Press (Convert)
- ② Use to change the conversion range
- ③ Press 🔲 to move to Suggestions
- (Confirm)
- (5) Repeat steps (2) through (4) as required

#### Tip

- When characters do not convert to target Kanji
   Try entering different readings of the Kanji. When multiple
   Kanji characters do not convert together, try to convert them
   separately.
- To toggle predicted/conversion alternatives

  While predicted alternatives appear, press (Convert) for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, press (Predict) for predicted alternatives.
- To set/release prediction entry function (�P.4-13)
- To convert using *User dictionary* (♦P.4-14)
- To enter date/time
  - 1 Press a key to enter a key to which numbers are assigned
  - ② Press (EngNumカナ)
  - (Confirm) (3) Highlight a conversion alternative and press

#### □ Resetting Text Entry History

Previous kanji conversions appear first for predicted/ conversion alternatives. Follow these steps to restore defaults.

- ① Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Phone settings*  $\rightarrow$  *User dictionary*  $\rightarrow$  *Reset learning*
- ② Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

#### Katakana

In Katakana mode, press a key to enter the assigned character



#### To add "or "

Enter a Katakana to which a voiced or semi-voiced sound symbol should be added and press

#### To correct a misentry

Use to delete the character and press the correct key

#### When key is pressed too many times

Press # to return to the previous character assigned to the same key

## To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press to move cursor to the right

#### Tip

• To enter Katakana in Kanji/Kana entry mode For example, to convert "くも" to "クモ" or "クモ".



- 1 In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter hiragana
- ② Press (EngNum力力)
- ③ Highlight katakana conversion alternative and press

  (Confirm)

#### Alphanumerics

In Alphanumerics entry mode, press a key to enter the assigned character



#### To toggle upper and lower case

Enter a character and press 🛬

#### To correct a misentry

Use to delete the character and press the correct key

#### When key is pressed too many times

Press # to return to a previous character assigned to the same key

## To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press to move cursor to the right

#### Tip

- To enter alphanumerics in Kanji/Kana entry mode

  Press key(s) assigned to alphanumerics as many times as it
  would take to enter same character(s) in Alphanumerics
  mode. For example, press 

  and once to enter "cd."
  - (1) In Kanji/Kana entry mode, press key to which alphanumeric is assigned
  - ② Press [ (EngNumカナ)
  - (3) Highlight alphanumeric conversion alternative and press

#### Numbers

In Number entry mode, press number keys



#### To correct a misentry

Use Clear to delete the entry, then enter correction

#### Tip

- To enter numbers in Kanji/Kana entry mode
  - ① In Kanji/Kana entry mode, press key to which number is assigned
  - ② Press 💬 (EngNumカナ)
  - ③ Highlight number conversion alternative and press (Confirm)

## Symbols, Pictograms, & Emoticons

In a text entry window, press # to toggle symbols

To toggle double-byte symbols and singlebyte symbols

Press while Suggestions for double-byte symbols and single-byte symbols appear

**2** Highlight target character and press



To enter symbols, pictograms, or emoticons successively

Press (Continue)



#### Tip

 To enter symbols, pictograms, or emoticons in Kanji/ Kana entry mode

Enter hiragana like てん and press ( Convert ), symbols  $\cdot$  and  $\cdot \cdot \cdot$  appear among conversion alternatives. Similarly, convert はーと or でんわ to pictograms and わーい or えーん to emoticons.

#### **Line Breaks**

Enter a line break the same way in all text entry modes.

In a text entry window, press



#### **Quoting Saved Text**

#### **Using Phonebook Entries**

In a text entry window, use *Phonebook* via *Options* to search saved entries for inserting phone numbers or mail addresses into message text.

- In message text, select *Options* → **Phonebook**
- Select an entry and open details
- ☐ Highlight an item and press ☐ (Select)

#### **SMS Template**

In a text entry window, use SMS template via Options to quote saved text in SMS.

Save frequently used words/phrases as SMS templates beforehand (◆P.4-15).

- In message text, select  $Options \rightarrow$ SMS template
- Select a template

#### **Using Template**

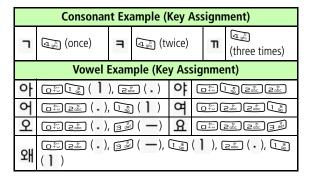
In a text entry window, use Templates via Options to save ".ne.jp" or "http://www" in Phonebook for one keystroke entry.

- In message text, select  $Options \rightarrow$ **Templates**
- Select an item

#### Hangul

Select Hangul entry mode to enter Hangul characters.

- In a text entry window, press and select *Hangul*
- 2 Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels



#### Editing Text



Highlight character to delete and press Cear

#### When a space is highlighted

The character before cursor is deleted.

#### To delete all text on/after cursor

Press Clear for 1+ seconds

#### To delete all text

Place cursor at the end of text and press for 1+ seconds

#### 0

#### Copy/Cut, Paste & Undo

#### Copy/Cut

Select a range of characters to copy/cut. Paste copied/cut characters repeatedly to other locations.

- In a text entry window, select *Options*→ *Copy* or *Cut*
- 2 Use to highlight the first character in the range and press
  - (Start)

To copy/cut all

Press 💬 (All)

3 Use to specify range and press (End)

#### Tip

 To copy text from Phonebook entries or My Phonebook Details

*Options* → *Copy item* (♠P.5-13, 5-16)

· Copied/cut items

Up to 10 copied/cut items can be saved. Content remains even power is turned off. With 10 items are already saved, oldest item is automatically deleted.

#### **Paste**

- Use to move cursor to paste location
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Paste*
- Select an item to paste and press (Select)

#### Tip

• To delete copied/cut items
In Step 3, highlight item to delete, press ::: (Delete) and select Yes.

#### Undo

Undo operations immediately after performing such as Cut, Paste, or Delete. Alternatively, undo converting operations immediately after character conversion; this operation can be performed in Kanji/Kana entry mode only.

In a text entry window, select *Options*→ *Undo* 

#### Jump

In a text entry window, select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Jump*  $\rightarrow$  *Top* or *End* 

#### Prediction On/Off (Japanese Only)

Select to show/hide Japanese kana conversion alternatives in Suggestions.

Default Setting =On

In a text entry window, select *Options* 

→ Prediction On or Prediction Off

## Learning On/Off (Japanese Only)

Default Setting = On

Select to save/discard entered character strings by Suggestions.

In a text entry window, select *Options* 

→ Learning On or Learning Off

#### Font Size

Default Setting = Large

Change font size for SMS, S! Mail, or template text; available sizes vary.

In message text, select *Options* → Font Size

#### User Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when key characters are entered.

- Press | (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Phone settings  $\rightarrow$  User dictionary
  - $\rightarrow$  New entry
- Select Word field and enter text

#### **3** Select Reading field and enter key characters

Press (Save)

#### Tip

- To edit User Dictionary entries
  - (1) Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Phone*  $settings \rightarrow User\ dictionary \rightarrow Edit\ entry$
  - (2) Select contents to edit
  - (Save)
- To delete one item
  - 1 Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Phone*  $settings \rightarrow User\ dictionary \rightarrow Edit\ entry$
  - (2) Highlight item to delete, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete$
- To delete all items
  - 1 Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Phone*  $settings \rightarrow User\ dictionary \rightarrow Delete\ all$
  - (2) Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select Yes

#### Saving to User Dictionary

- In a text entry window, select *Options*→ *Word registration*
- 2 Use to move cursor to the first character, press (Start)

To display User Dictionary window for checking the saved contents, etc.

Press (UserDic)

- 3 Use to set the range, press (End)
- 4 Select Reading field and enter reading
- 5 Press (Save)

#### Tip

- When the range containing line break
   Character string before line break is saved as the dictionary word.
- To edit User dictionary

Press (UserDic) to select start point for Word registration; operations in "User Dictionary (Japanese Only)" ( P.4-14) can be performed. Select *Edit entry* and registered entries appear.

#### SMS Templates

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 70 characters.

- Press <sup>…</sup> ( ) and select *Templates*→ *SMS templates*
- 2 Select *Options* → *Add new*When no SMS templates have been saved
  Press ::: (Add new)
- 3 Press (Select) and enter text

#### 4 Press 🚾 (Save)

#### Tip

- To use an SMS template (♦P.4-10)
- To edit an SMS template
  - ① Press · ( ) and select *Templates* → *SMS* templates
  - (Edit) (Edit)
  - 3 Press (Select) and edit the text
  - 4 Press (Save)
- To delete an SMS template
  - ① Press · ( ) and select *Templates* → *SMS templates*
  - ② Highlight an item to delete, select Options → Delete → Selected → Yes

To delete all SMS templates, in Step ②, select  $Delete \rightarrow All$ , enter Phone Password, press  $\blacksquare$  (Confirm) and select Yes. To delete multiple items, select  $Delete \rightarrow Multiple$  in Step ②, check items to delete, press  $\boxdot$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow Yes$ .



#### Saving to Phonebook

#### Phonebook Entry Items

Save phone numbers, mail addresses, and more for up to 1,000 entries in Phonebook; USIM Card Phonebook capacity varies by card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to use USIM Card Phonebook entries. Each 705SC Phonebook entry contains items listed below.

	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
Item		705SC	USIM Card
Entry Number	a 3-digit number	Yes (000-999) <sup>1</sup>	Yes (000-0XX) <sup>2</sup>
Name	Single-/double-byte characters	Yes (Up to 50 characters)	Yes <sup>3</sup>
Reading	Single-byte characters	Yes	Yes <sup>3</sup>
Phone Icon	Select one of six icons	Yes (Six Icons)	No

		Availability (Quantity)	
Item	Description	705SC	USIM Card
Phone Number	Saved with area code	Yes (5 of up to 40 digits each)	Yes <sup>2 3</sup>
Email	Single-byte alphanumerics	Yes (4 of up to 256 characters each)	Yes <sup>3</sup> (1 address)
Email Icon	Select one of three icons	Yes	No
Category	Select one of twenty categories	Yes	Yes <sup>2</sup>
Caller ID	Select incoming call image from Data Folder	Yes	No
Call Notice	Select incoming call ringtone from Data Folder	Yes	No

	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
Item		705SC	USIM Card
Message Notice	Select incoming S! Mail/SMS ringtone from Data Folder	Yes	No
Blood Type	Select one of four blood types	Yes	No
Birthday	Enter the party's date of birth	Yes	No
Address	Enter up to 20 single- byte characters for postal code and up to 50 for address	Yes	No
Hobby	Up to 100 characters	Yes	No
URL	Up to 100 single-byte alphanumerics	Yes (2 URLs)	No
URL Icon	Select one of three icons	Yes	No
Notes	Up to 100 characters	Yes	No
Secret Mode	Select secret setting	Yes	No

- 1 Use speed dialing (◆P.5-12) to initiate voice calls to primary number saved in Phonebook Entry Numbers 000 099.
- 2 The number of items that can be saved varies by the type of USIM Card.
- 3 The number of characters that can be saved varies by the type of USIM Card.

#### Note

Protect important information
 Phonebook entries may be lost/altered if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries.
 Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost information.

#### Adding Entry Items

705SC assigns lowest available Entry Number; edit as required.



**Phonebook Details** 

## Select *Options* → *Add to* → *Phone* or *USIM*

#### **2** Enter additional items as required

\*Not available in USIM Card Phonebook.

#### To change Entry number

Highlight Entry number field and enter a number

#### To save Name

- 1) Select Name field
- (2) Enter a name

#### To modify Reading Name

- (1) Select Reading Name field
- (2) Enter a reading name (use katakana to organize entries in Phonebook list)

#### To save Phone number

Highlight Phone number field and enter a number

#### To set Phone icon

- (1) Select Phone number field
- (2) Select an icon

#### To save Mail address

- 1) Select Mail address field
- (2) Enter an address
- (3) Select an icon

#### To set Category

- (1) Select Category field
- Select a Category

#### To set Caller ID for a Voice Call or Video Call\*

- (1) Select Caller ID field
- (2) Select On
- (3) Open Data Folder to select an image file, etc.

#### To set Call notice for a Voice or Video Call\*

- 1) Select Call notice field
- (2) Select *On*
- **3** Open Data Folder to select a file

#### To set S! Mail/SMS Notice\*

- 1 Select Message notice field
- 2 Select On
- (3) Select sound

#### To save Blood type\*

- 1 Select Blood type field
- Select blood Type

#### To save Birthday\*

Highlight Birthday field and enter a date

#### To save Address\*

- (1) Select Address field
- **2** Enter a postal code
- (3) Select Address field and enter an address
- 4) Press (OK)

#### To save Hobby\*

- 1 Select Hobby field
- (2) Enter text

#### To save URL\*

- (1) Select URL field
- (2) Enter a URL
- 3 Select an icon

#### To save Memo\*

- 1) Select Notes field
- **2** Enter text

#### To set Secret Mode\*

- 1 Select Secret Mode field
- (2) Select On
- 3 Press (Save)

#### Tip

Valid Phone Field Characters

Enter 0-9, #, \*, P (Pause), and + (International Code). Press (\*\*) for 1+ seconds to enter P or press (\*\*) for 1+ seconds to enter +.

• Saving an Entered Phone Number

During a call:  $Options \rightarrow Add$  to Phonebook

- 1 In Standby, enter a phone number
- **2** Options → Add to Phonebook → Phone or USIM
- (3) Select New or Update and select memory location
- (4) Select a phone icon
- 5 Perform Steps 2 and 3
- Using Memory Card Files as Incoming Images/Tones
   Confirmation appears: Copy files to Phone memory before setting; move copy protected files before setting.
- Synchronizing Phonebook with Samsung PC Studio
   Secret Mode entries cannot be synchronized or backed-up to a PC even if Secret Mode is active.

The entries with Secret Mode changed from *Off* to *On*, cannot be synchronized and deleted immediately after the Secret Mode settings has been changed and tried synchronization.

For more information about Samsung PC Studio, see the User's guide in the attached CD-ROM.

#### Saving from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

- Press 🗖
- 2 Use  $\bigcirc$  to open a Call Log, highlight a record, select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Add to Phonebook*  $\rightarrow$  *Phone* or *USIM*
- 3 Select Phonebook entry type

To create a new entry

Select New

To save to an existing entry

- 1 Select *Update*
- ② Open the Phonebook entry (◆P.5-9)
- 4 Select a phone icon
- 5 Enter additional items as required

6 Press 🚾 (Save)

#### Category Settings

Organize Phonebook entries among twenty Categories.

#### New Category (USIM Card)

- Press (Menu) and select
- **2** Select *Options* → *View from USIM*
- **3** Press ::: (Search) and select *Category* search
- **4** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *New category*
- **5** Enter a name

#### Edit Category

Customize Category names, add Category image/ringtones to appear and sound for incoming calls/messages from Category members.

Press (Menu) and select

Phonebook

To select a USIM Card Category

After Step 1, select Options → View from USIM

- 2 Press (Search) and select *Category* search
- 3 Highlight category to change, select

  Options → Category settings

#### ▲ Edit Category items

#### To change Category name

Select Category name field and enter a name

#### To set Category image

Select Category image field then select a file from Data Folder

#### To set incoming call ringtone

Select Call notice field then select a file from Data Folder

#### To set incoming S! Mail/SMS notice

Select Message notice field then select a ringtone

#### To restore Category defaults

Highlight item to restore and press (Reset)

**5** Press (Save)

#### Tip

- Incoming Image & Ringtone Priority
  Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries
  take priority over those set for a Category.
- Using Memory Card files as Incoming Images/Tones
  Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.

#### Add Member

Press (Menu) and select

To select Category on USIM Card

After Step 1, select  $Options \rightarrow View from USIM$ 

- **2** Press : Search and select Category search
- 3 Select Category to which to add member

## 5 Check the member to add and press (Add)

Tip

• To delete a member from a Category

Deleting a member from a Category does not affect member's Phonebook entry.

- (1) Perform Steps 1 and 2 in "Add Member"
- 2 Select Category from which to delete member
- ③ Highlight member to delete, select *Options* → *Remove* → *Yes*

#### Using Phonebook

#### Calling from Phonebook

#### **Phonebook Search**

Press 🖵

If the correct search method appears first

Proceed to Step 2, Part 2

### To change method from an active search window

Press and proceed to Step 2

2 Press (Search)

#### To search Phonebook list

- 1) Select Phonebook list
- ② Use to navigate Phonebook list

#### To search by Category

- 1 Select *Category search*
- Select Category

#### To search by name

- 1 Select *Name search*
- **2** Enter any part of Name

#### To search by Reading

- (1) Select *Reading search*
- 2 Enter any part of Reading

#### To search by Entry Number

- 1 Select Entry No. search
- **2** Enter Entry Number

#### To search by Phone Number

- 1 Select *Phone No. search*
- **2** Enter any part of a phone number

#### To search by Mail Address

- (1) Select *Email search*
- ② Enter any part of an mail address

#### 3 Select an entry

#### To open Entry details

Press (Details/Select)

#### Tip

- To set Phonebook preference (Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook)
  - ① Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Phonebook* settings  $\rightarrow$  *View phonebook from*
  - ② Select *Phone memory* or *USIM memory* and press (Save)
- When Secret Mode is set to Hide
   Secret Phonebook entries do not appear. Activate Secret
   Mode to search Secret entries.

#### **Initiating a Call**

Select an entry, press (Details) to view Details window



**Entry Details** 

**?** Select a number and initiate a call

#### To initiate a Voice Call

Press  $\blacksquare$  or select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Voice call* 

#### To initiate a Video Call

Select  $Options \rightarrow Video\ call$ 

#### Tip

To place a call from Phonebook list

Highlight an entry, select  $Options \rightarrow Voice\ call$  or  $Video\ call$ . When entry contains multiple numbers, Default Number is dialled if set; otherwise, first number listed is dialled. If Default Number is  $Not\ assigned$ , Call window appears; select a number.

**☐** Calling from Simple Search or search result

Reading name corresponding to the Entry Number appears. Highlight a phone number, press  $\bigcirc$  or  $\blacksquare$  (Select)  $\rightarrow$   $\blacksquare$  (Call) to initiate a Voice Call;  $Options \rightarrow Video\ call$  for Video Call.

Enter 4-digit number to search and open entry name/phone number; this search for entries contains the entered number at the first/last part of the entry. When *Simple search* is *On* and an entry searched, press to switch search result between Phone No. search and *Simple search*. Highlight a phone number, press or (Select) → (Call) to initiate a Voice Call; select *Options* → *Video call* to call a Video Call.

#### **Calling USIM Card Phonebook Entries**

Use Entry Numbers as shortcuts to call numbers saved in the first 100 USIM Card Phonebook entries.

**1** Enter last two Entry Number digits

2 Press # 29

If the correct entry is not highlighted

Use 🗖 to highlight it

3 Press (Call)

To initiate a Video Call

Press (V-Call)

# **Change Search Method**

Default Setting = Phonebook list

Specify search window to appear first when  $\square$  is pressed in Standby.

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

### Tip

Search Method Items

Phonebook list: Press in Standby, list appears. Other settings: search window appears.

# Speed Dialing

Enter the last two Entry Number digits to call Voice Call Default Number in Phonebook entries 000 - 099.

**The Inter last two Entry Number digits** 

2 Press ( )

### Tip

When Simple search is On
 Enter Entry No. for names and phone numbers. After 10 seconds, search result disappears. When appears, press
 to dial.

### Note

- Speed Dialing is invalid for an entry if Voice Call Default Number (\$P.5-14) is set to Not assigned.
- While Secret Mode is set to Hide, Secret Phonebook entries cannot be dialled.

# Phonebook Options

Use the following options in Phonebook List or Entry details.

Item	Description
Add to <sup>1</sup>	Start the process of saving a new entry.
Voice call	Initiate a Voice Call to the highlighted number or Default Number (◆P.5-10).
Video call	Initiate a Video Call to the highlighted number or Default Number (◆P.5-10).
Create message	Open a new message addressed to the number saved as an entry (◆P.17-6).
Send	Send entry as a vFile; select <i>Via message</i> , to open a new message with entry attached (♠P.17-6), or <i>Via bluetooth</i> , to send entry to another device wirelessly (♠P.12-5).
Delete	Delete an entry (◆P.5-15).
Save to Data Folder	Create and save vFiles. Select <i>Phone</i> to save to Data Folder <i>Other documents</i> or <i>Memory card</i> to save to Memory Card.

Item	Description
Copy to USIM/ Copy to phone	( <b>●</b> P.5-15)
View from USIM/ View from Phone <sup>1</sup>	Toggle Phonebook and USIM Phonebook.
International dial	Add international code and country code to the number (�P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Show or hide your number when making calls; Select <i>None</i> to apply Caller ID setting.
Print via Bluetooth	Print highlighted Entry details (name, phone number information) using the printer via Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> connection.
Memory status <sup>1</sup>	Check memory usage.
Copy item <sup>2</sup>	Copy highlighted entry item.
Mark default number <sup>2</sup>	( <b>◆</b> P.5-14)

- 1 This item does not appear in Entry details.
- 2 This item does not appear in Phonebook list.

# Editing Phonebook Entries

To search, list or Entry details, see "Phonebook Search" (P.5-9).

Activate Secret Mode to edit Secret Phonebook entries.

# Edit

**Open Entry details** 

Press (Edit)

Edit entry items and press (Save)

### **Default Number**

Default Setting

- Voice call: First phone number
- ■Video call: First phone number
- Message: Not assigned

When an entry contains multiple numbers/addresses, set calling/messaging priorities by assigning Default Number.

Resetting an item changes it to *Not assigned*.

Open Entry details

**\triangleright** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Mark default* number

Set or reset options

### To set

- (1) Select *Voice call. Video call.* or *Message*
- (2) Select a phone number or mail address

### To reset

Highlight Voice call, Video call, or Message and press (Reset)

✓ Press (Save)

# Copy to USIM & Copy to Phone

- Highlight entry or open Entry details
- **2** Copy the entry

From Phonebook to USIM Card Phonebook

Options  $\rightarrow$  Copy to USIM  $\rightarrow$  Selected or All  $\rightarrow$ Yes

From USIM Card Phonebook to Phonebook

Options  $\rightarrow$  Copy to phone  $\rightarrow$  Selected or All

# Deleting Entries

# **Deleting a Single Entry**

Highlight entry or open Entry details

2 Select Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# **Deleting Multiple Entries at Once**

- Highlight entries
  To select Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook
  Options → View from Phone or View from USIM
- **2** Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
- 3 Check an entry to delete
- 4 Repeat Step 3 to check all target entries
- 5 Press (Delete) and proceed to Step 7 when all are not checked
- Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm)
- 7 Select Yes

# **Deleting All Entries at Once**

Delete all Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook entries.

**1** Highlight entries

**Toggle Phonebook and USIM Card Phonebook**Options → View from USIM or View from Phone

- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Delete*  $\rightarrow$  *All*
- 3 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm)  $\rightarrow Yes$

# 🮜 My Phonebook Details

Confirm handset phone number. Add your name, mail address, street address, and other information.

Press 🔳 (Menu) and Press 🕞

### To enter or edit other items

- 1 Press (Edit)
- ②Enter/edit items following the Phonebook item procedures; when finished, press (Save)

### Options

Item	Description
Send my phonebook details	Send as a vFile; select <i>Via message</i> to create a message with vFile attached (◆P.17-6), or <i>Via Bluetooth</i> to send vFile wirelessly (◆P.12-5).
Delete	Delete owner info except USIM Card number.
Save to Data Folder	Create and save vFiles. Select <i>Phone</i> to save to Data Folder <i>Other documents</i> or <i>Memory card</i> to save to Memory Card.
Copy item	Copy highlighted entry item.
Print via Bluetooth	Print My phonebook details (name, phone number information) using printer via Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> connection.

# Video Call

# Before Using Video Call

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

You may choose not to send your own image (>P.6-6).

### ➡ Video Call Precautions

- Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; charges apply.
- It may be difficult to use Speaker Phone with earpiece volume raised; lower volume or use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality; use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

# 🎜 Initiating a Video Call

Call via Phonebook entries/Call Log records or dial directly.

**Tenter a phone number** 

**?** Select *Options* → *Video call* 

3 Press 🕝 to end the call

### Tip

- Engaged Video Call Operations (�P.6-3)
- When Video Call cannot be connected Unavailable for a video call... appears; select Options → Voice call or Create message to contact the recipient, or

View contact details to open Phonebook. Select Add to Phonebook to save the receiver's number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook.

☐ Initiating a Call (♠P.2-3)

# 🧷 Receiving a Video Call

When 705SC rings/vibrates, press



Allow own picture to be shown? appears; Select Yes or No.

2 Press 🕝 to end the call

### Tip

- To adjust ringtone volume
  While 705SC is ringing, press o or .
- When a Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected
   Press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer Video Calls. Press for 1+ seconds to end a Video Call.
- To disconnect a Video Call without answering it Press :: (Busy)
- To change or cancel outgoing image
  Set 705SC to send Substitute Image beforehand (◆P.6-6).
  Alternatively, change to Substitute Image during a call
  (◆P.6-6).
- Send Your Image or Substitute Image
   After Step 1, Your Image appears. When confirmation appears, select Yes or No to send Your Image or Substitute Image. When Video Call connects Your Image or Substitute Image appears.
- Engaged Video Call Operations (♦ P.6-5)

# Engaged Video Call Operations

Perform operations from Video Call Menu or *Options*.



- 1 Large Display (Normally, the other party's image)
- 2 Small Display (Normally, your image)
- 3 The other party's name or phone number
- 4 Call duration
- 5 Meaning of the icon at cursor position
- 6 Video Call Menu Icons
- ♠ / ♠: Toggle Speaker Phone Off/On
- : Toggle Incoming Image Size
- ☑ / ☑ : Freeze or unfreeze outgoing image

- ♣ (Blue)/ ♣ (Gray): Toggle Your Image and Substitute Image
- / ⇒: Freeze or unfreeze incoming image
- 📸 : Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera
- During Video Calls, select Video Call Menu or *Options* to adjust settings

To toggle Speaker Phone off/on

Highlight ● / ● and press ■

To select incoming image size

Highlight 🗗 and press 🔳 to select an item

To freeze or unfreeze outgoing image

Highlight 📕 / 🖹 and press 🔳

To toggle Your Image and Substitute Image

Highlight **2** (Blue/Gray) and press

To freeze or unfreeze incoming image

Highlight **■** / → and press **■** 

To toggle Internal and External Camera

Highlight 🗃 and press 🔳

### To cancel Your Image/mic/key tones

- ①  $Options \rightarrow Mute$
- ② Check item(s) to cancel and press ..... (Save)
  When Camera (Your Image) is canceled, Substitute
  Image is sent.

### To adjust outgoing image appearance/quality

- ① Options → Display options → Effects or Quality
- 2 Highlight an item and press

### To adjust outgoing image brightness

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Display options  $\rightarrow$  Brightness
- ② Use to adjust brightness

### Tip

- To adjust earpiece volume Press uduring a Video Call.
- To enlarge or reduce outgoing image Press or u during a Video Call.
- When outgoing image is canceled 705SC send caller Substitute Image.

# Engaged Video Call Options

Item	Description
Normal/Speaker on	Toggle Speaker Phone off/on (♠P.6-4).
Mute	Cancel sending outgoing image/mic/ key tones (�P.6-4).
Display options	Adjust outgoing image appearance/ quality (�P.6-4).
Settings	Select Video Call settings (�P.6-5).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (�P.5-6).

Item	Description
Send DTMF	Send push tones.
Memo	Create and save text memos (♠P.14-10).
Details	Open Phonebook Entry details.
Switch to headset/ Switch to phone	Appears when Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> - compatible headset is in use. Select headset or phone (handset).

# Video Call Settings

# Sending Your Image

Default Setting = Always ask

When *Always ask* is set, Choose between Your Image or Substitute Image as outgoing image each time a Video Call is received.

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

# Selecting a Substitute Image

Default Setting Camera Off

Select an image to use as the outgoing image.

- 2 Press (Change)
- 3 Open Data Folder, select a file and press **■** (Save)

### Tip

- To restore Substitute Image to its default
  - 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2
  - ② Select any image file in Data Folder → Options → Reset

# Retry Settings

Default Setting = Always ask

- Press (Menu) and select Settings

  → Call settings → Video call → Retry

  with
- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

### Tip

### • Retry with Items

Always ask: Select an action from *Options*. *Voice call*; Redial number as a Voice Call.

Messages: Create a message.

*None*: Return to Standby after a failed Video Call. Automatic retry option changes by setting.

### Tip

### · To send sound

- ① During a Video Call, select  $Options \rightarrow Mute$
- 2 Uncheck Voice
- (Save)

# Voice Mute

Default Setting = Off

Set *Voice mute* to *On* to answer Video Calls with no sound sending to caller.

- 2 Select *On* and press (Save)

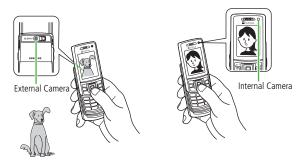
# Mobile Camera

# Before Using Mobile Camera

Capture still images in JPEG or video in 3GP format.

### Mobile Camera Precautions

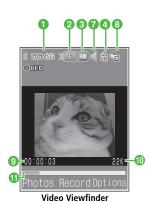
- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from lens cover.
- Avoid camera shake; hold 705SC steady or place it on a stable surface and use Timer.
- Mobile Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving 705SC in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect color filter.



# Using Display as Viewfinder







Size

[1600×1200], [1230×560], [640×490], [320×240], [240×620], [128×96]

Quality

SF: Superfine F: Fine
N: Normal L: Low

: Economy

**3** White Balance

☐ : Auto☐ : Fine☐ : Cloudy☐ : Fluorescent

4 Flash

霜: Permanent

6 Mode

No display : Single shot

(6 shots) (1) : Multi-shot (9 shots)

**15** : Multi-shot (15 shots)

: Mosaic shot (2 x 2)

6 Timer (When set)

3 seconds
5 seconds

7 Audio Recording

Recording Time

: Limit for S! Mail : 10 seconds : 30 seconds : Normal recording

**(9)** Elapsed Recording Time

10 Total Data Size/Recording Time

Progress Bar

# 🮜 Capturing a Still Image

# Camera Mode

Select *Single shot* to capture single images, *Multishot* or *Mosaic shot* to capture multiple images. Save images in Pictures.

Mode	Description	Image size
		1600 x 1200
	Capture single images, select	1280 x 960
Single shot	size for purpose; attach images	640 x 480
Siligle shot	to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper,	320 x 240
	etc.	240 x 320
		240 x 192
Multi-shot	Press shutter once to capture 6,	320 x 240
	9 or 15 sequential images.	020 /: = ::
	Capture multiple images, one at	
Mosaic shot	a time; 705SC automatically	
	combines single images (4 for	240 x 192
	2 x 2 or 9 for 3 x 3) into one	
	composite image.	

### Tip

• When using Single shot mode with a frame Image size is automatically adjusted to 240 x 192.

# Capturing Still Images

### Single Shot

- Press for 1+ seconds
  In Video mode
  Press (Photos) to change to Camera mode
- 2 Select Options → Shooting mode →
  Single shot → Take & save

  To save captured images without review

  Select Automatic save
- 3 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (⊕P.7-5)
- 4 Preview image on Display

  Zoom image preview in/out (invalid for 1600 x

  1200 (External Camera) and 640 x 480

Use or to zoom out or in

(Internal Camera))

### **Adjust brightness**

Use or to lighten or darken image

# **5** Press (Take)

To cancel the image and capture another Press (Back)

### Tip

- To activate/adjust Timer in image preview

  Press to toggle 3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, and Off.
- To toggle Internal Camera and External Camera In image preview, select *Options* → *Switch camera*.
- To adjust viewfinder in image preview

  Press # to toggle Full screen, Actual ratio, Full screen without indicator, and Full screen with grid.
- To use Mobile Light when shooting
   After Step 2, select Options → Flash → Auto, Shooting only, or Permanent
- To send an image via S! Mail or Bluetooth®

### Preview Options

Available options may vary by mode and other settings.

Item	Description
Switch camera	Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera (�P.7-5).
Shooting mode	Select Shooting mode and save setting for <i>Single shot</i> , or image count for <i>Multi-shot</i> or <i>Mosaic shot</i> (●P.7-4, 7-8).
Effects	Select <i>Black &amp; White, Sepia</i> or <i>Negative</i> effects filters. When an effect is active, select <i>None</i> to cancel.
Frames	Add a frame to image in Single shot mode.
Flash	Use Mobile Light (�P.7-4).
Timer	Activate self-timer (�P.7-5).
Go to photos	Open Pictures folder.
Camera settings	Select image size, image quality, etc. (◆P.7-12).
Camera shortcuts	Open a function shortcuts graphic (◆P.7-9).

# **Review Options**

Item	Description
Delete	Delete the last image captured.
Set as	Set image for Wallpaper, Phonebook entries, or Substitute Image.
Edit photo	Edit an image in Pictures folder (�P.7-16).
Dynamic Effect	Create Flash images using Still images (♠P.7-19).
Rename	Change file name.
mPostcard	Create a mobile postcard (�P.7-6).
Go to photos	Open Pictures folder.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size or format.

### **Mobile Postcard**

Use *Single shot*, *Multi-shot*, or *Mosaic shot* images. This function renders one of two images as line art, merging it with the other to create a stamped photograph.

- **1** Capture an image (�P.7-4, 7-8)
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *mPostcard*
- 3 Press (Add)
- 4 Add a second image

To select a still image from Data Folder

- 1 Select *Open*
- ② Open Data Folder and select an image file

### To capture an image

- 1 Select Take photo
- 2 Press (Take)
- 3 Press (Add)

# **5** Press (Merge) and check result

### To change image

- 1) Press Clear
- ② Highlight image to change, select *Options* → *Change image*
- Repeat Steps 4 and 5

### To swap image positions

- 1 Press Clear
- ② Options → Swap image
- 3 Perform Step 5

# 6 To edit line art, press [::] (Edit)

### To change line art position

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Move
- ②Use to move image and press ••• (Done)

### To change line art size

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Size
- ②Use 🔲 to adjust image and press 💬 (Done)

### To rotate line art

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Rotate
- ② Use to rotate image and press (Done)

### To change line art color

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Change colour
- ② Use to select color and press (Done)

### To adjust line art shadow

- ① Options → Shadow on or Shadow off
- 2 Press (Done)

# 7 Press (Save) and enter a file name

### To save and send image

- 1 Press (S & S)
- ② Select medium and send (◆P.12-5, 17-6)

### **Multi Shot**

Press for 1+ seconds

In Video mode

Press (Photos) to change Camera mode

- Select Options → Shooting mode → Multi-shot and select the number of images to capture
- 3 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (⊕P.7-5)
- 4 Preview image on Display

Zoom in/out

Use or containing or reduce image

Adjust brightness

Use or to lighten or darken image

**5** Press (Take)

6 View captured still image(s)

To view still images individually

- 1 Highlight the image and press (View)
- 2 Press Clear

To retake a still image

Press (Back)

### **Mosaic Shot**

Press for 1+ seconds

In Video mode

Press (Photos) to change Camera mode

- Select Options → Shooting mode → Mosaic shot to select the number of images to capture
- 3 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (⊕P.7-5)

# 4. Preview image on Display

### Zoom in/out

### **Adjust brightness**

Use or to brighten or darken image

**5** Press (Take) for each image

# **6** View captured still images



Mosaic Mode (2 x 2)

### To retake an image

Press (Back)

### **☐** Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to change item settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
1 80	Size	1600 x 1200, 1280 x 960, 640 x 480, 320 x 240, 240 x 320, 240 x 192
2 abc	Quality	Superfine, Fine, Normal, Low, Economy
3 def	Shooting mode	Single shot, Multi-shot (6, 9, 15 shots), Mosaic shot (2 x 2, 3 x 3)
4 ghi	White balance	Auto, Fine, Cloudy, Incandescent, Fluorescent
5 <sup>‡</sup> <sub>jkl</sub>	Timer	3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
6 mno	Frames	Select from 9 types
Z <sub>pqrs</sub> ₹	Effects	Black & White, Sepia, Negative
0 +n pv	Photo album	-
# 85	Screen mode	Toggle Full screen, Actual ratio, Full screen without indicator, Full screen with grid
[]	Mode switch	-
0	Vertical inverse	-

Key	Item	Description
П	Horizontal	
0	inverse	-
	Zoom	-
	Brightness	-
**	Flash	Off, Auto, Shooting only,
		Permanent

# Capturing Video

### Video Mode

Capture clips to attach to mail or save as mementos.

Alternatively, capture clips without sound. Files are saved in 3GP format to Videos folder in Data Folder.

- Recording Video
- Press for 1+ seconds
  In Camera mode
  Press (Videos) to open Video mode
- 2 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (⊕P.7-11)
- 3 Preview image on Display

Zoom in/out

Use or containing to enlarge or reduce image

Adjust brightness

Use or to lighten or darken image

- 4 Press (Record)
- **5** Press (Save) and end

After recording time elapses

Recording ends and clip is saved automatically.

# 6 Press (Play) to view clip

### To continue recording

Press (Back)

### Tip

- To activate/adjust Timer
  In image preview, press 5 to toggle 3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, Off.
- To toggle Internal Camera and External Camera Before Step 4, select *Options* → *Switch camera*.
- To use Mobile Light when capturing

  After Step 1, select Options → Flash → Auto, Shooting only, or Permanent

### Preview Options

Item	Description
Switch camera	Toggle Internal Camera and External Camera (�P.7-11).
Effects	Select <i>Black &amp; White, Sepia</i> , or <i>Negative</i> effects filters. When an effect is active, select <i>None</i> to cancel.
Flash	Use Mobile Light (�P.7-10).

Item	Description
Timer	Activate self-timer (�P.7-11).
Go to videos	Open Videos folder.
Video settings	Select image size, image quality, etc. (◆P.7-14).
Camcorder shortcuts	Open a function shortcuts graphic (◆P.7-12).

### ☐ Review Options

Item	Description
Edit	Edit Video files in Data Folder (P.7-18).
Resolution	Select video display size while playing or paused.
Send	Send file via S! Mail (�P.17-6) or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> (�P.12-5).
Set as	Set captured videos as Voice ringtone or Video ringtone.
Delete	Delete the last video captured.
Rename	Change file name.
Go to videos	Open Videos folder.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size or format.

### **Shortcut Key Operations**

Change settings by pressing key assigned to each item.

Key	ltem	Description
* 3	Size	320 x 240, 176 x 144, 128 x 96
2 abc	Quality	Fine, Normal, Low, Economy
∃ def	Shooting time	Limit for S! Mail, 10 seconds, 30 seconds, Normal recording
4 ghi	White balance	Auto, Fine, Cloudy, Incandescent, Fluorescent
5 ½l	Timer	3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
# C	Audio recording	On, Off
<b>★</b> ** □ A/a	Flash	Off, Auto, Shooting only, Permanent
Z <sub>pgrs</sub>	Effects	Black & White, Sepia, Negative
0+n p	Record album	-
[]	Mode switch	-
0	Vertical inverse	-

Key	Item	Description
0	Horizontal	_
	inverse	-
	Zoom	-
	Brightness	-

# Mobile Camera Settings

Make settings related to image capturing including the size, image quality, save location, etc. of images.

# **Camera Settings**

- Default Setting Size: 240 x 320 Quality: Normal
  - Viewfinder: Full screen
  - Shutter sound: Shutter 1
  - Multi-shot speed: High
  - Single shot mode: Take & save
  - White balance: Auto ■ Default storage: Phone
  - Default name: Photo

Press for 1+ seconds

In Video mode

Press (Photos) to change to Camera mode

**2** Select *Options* → *Camera settings* 

3 Select an item and set

To set image size

(1) Select Size

2 Select the setting and press (Save)

To set image quality

1 Select *Quality* 

2 Select the setting and press (Save)

To set Viewfinder

1 Select Viewfinder

② Select the setting and press (Save)

To set the shutter sound

1 Select Shutter sound

② Select the setting and press (Save)

To set sequential shot speed

1 Select Multi-shot speed

2) Select the setting and press (Save)

To set the Single shot mode

1 Select Single shot mode

② Select the setting and press (Save)

To set white balance

(1) Select White balance

2) Select the setting and press (Save)

To set save location (Phone/Memory Card)

1 Select *Default storage* 

2 Select the setting and press (Save)

To set file name

1 Select *Default name* 

2 Enter file name

Tip

• Saving Location setting

Change *Default storage* in Camera settings; *Saving Location* in Video settings follows the changes.

# **Video Settings**

- Default Setting Recording time: Limit for S! Mail
  - Size: 176 x 144
  - Quality: Economy = Audio recording: On
  - Default storage: Phone
  - Default name: Video

# Press for 1+ seconds

In Camera mode

Press (Videos) to change to Video mode

- **\triangleright** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Video settings*
- Select an item and adjust settings

To set duration

- (1) Select *Recording time*
- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

To set size

- (1) Select *Size*
- (2) Select the setting and press (Save)

To set image quality

- (1) Select *Quality*
- (2) Select the setting and press (Save)

### To set voice recording

- (1) Select *Audio recording*
- (Save)

### To set save location (Phone/Memory Card)

- (1) Select *Default storage*
- ② Select the setting and press (Save)

### To set file name

- (1) Select *Default name*
- (2) Enter file name

### Tip

· Video recording time

When the recording time is set to *Normal recording*, video with maximum of approximately one hour can be recorded in ordinary mode.

- When *Recording time* is set to *Limit for S! Mail*Unable to set *Size with 320 x 240*; Quality is automatically set to *Economy*, and cannot be changed.
- Saving Location setting

Change Default storage in Video settings; *Saving Location* in Camera settings follows the changes. Even with no Memory Card inserted, *Memory card* can be set; but files are saved to 705SC (Phone) Data Folder.

# Viewing Images

View images/video clips saved in Data Folder.

- Viewing Still Images
  - Press for 1+ seconds

In Video mode

Press (Photos) to change Camera mode

- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Go to photos*
- 3 Highlight a file and press (View)
- Viewing Videos
- Press for 1+ seconds

In Camera mode

Press (Videos) to change to Video mode

- **?** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Go to videos*
- Highlight and select a file and press (Play)

# Editing Still Images

Edit image files saved in Data Folder.

- Press (Menu), select *Data folder* and select an image to edit
- 2 Highlight a file and press (View)
- 3 Press (Edit)
- 4 Edit using Options

### To change the size of an image

- (1) Select *Resize*
- Select the setting
- (3) Enter Width or Height (If Customise is selected)
- 4) Press (Done)

### To add effects to an image

- 1 Select Effects
- 2 Select the setting
- 3 Press (Done)

### To add blur or correct red-eye

- ① Select Partial effects  $\rightarrow$  Partial blur or Redeye repair
- ② Options and select the suitable operation
- ③ Press (Done)

### To adjust an image

- $\textcircled{1} \textbf{Select } \textit{Adjust} \rightarrow \textit{Brightness/Contrast/Colour}$
- Adjust the image
- ③ Press [ (Done)

### To add a frame

- 1 Select Frames
- ② Use to select a frame
- (3) Press (Done)

### To add clip art to an image

- 1 Select *Cliparts*
- ② Select a piece of clip art to add to an image
- ③ *Options* → *Size* and use  $\Box$  to adjust clip art size
- **4** *Options* → *Rotate* and use  $\Box$  to turn clip art
- (5) Options → Move and use  $\square$  to move clip art

⑥ Press <sup>...</sup> (Done)

### To add text to image (320 x 240 or above)

- (1) Select *Insert text*
- 2 Enter text
- ③ *Options* → *Size* and use  $\Box$  to adjust text size
- **4** *Options* → *Rotate* and use  $\square$  to turn text
- **(5)** Options → Font size → Large/Normal/Small
- **(6)** Options → Colour and use  $\square$  to adjust text color
- 7 Press (Done)

### To rotate image

- 1) Select *Rotate*
- **2** Select 90° R or 90° L
- 3 Press (Done)

### To flip image

- 1 Select Flip
- 2 Select *Vertically* or *Horizontally*
- 3 Press (Done)

### To crop image

- 1 Select *Crop*
- ② Options → Size and use  $\square$  to adjust trimming size
- ③ Options → Shape and use to select trimming shape
- ④ Options → Move and use to adjust trimming position
- $\bigcirc$  Options → Crop
- ⑥ Press <sup>™</sup> (Done)
- **5** Press (Save)
- 6 Enter a name for the image

# Editing Video

Edit Video files in Data Folder.

- Press (Menu), and select *Data*Folder → Videos
- **2** Highlight a file, select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit*
- 3 Edit using *Options*

### To cut video

- 1) Select Cut
- 2 Press (Play)
- ③ Press (Start) at the start point
- (4) Press (End) at the End point
- (5) To cancel and retry, press (Reset) and repeat
  - 2 to 4
- 6 Press (Done)

### To merge multiple videos

- 1 Select Merge
- 2 Check files to merge (Up to ten files)

- 3 Press (Memory) to check Memory Card files
- (4) Repeat (2) and (3) to check all target files
- ⑤ Press <sup>™</sup> (Done)
- ⑥ Press (Merge)

### To replace sound from other video/sound

- ① Select *Replace sound* → *From other video* or *From other sound*
- 2 Press (Open)
- ③ Select a file and press ☐ (Done)
- 4 Press (Save)
- **5** Enter a file name

### Tip

- To confirm video before editing Press (Preview)
- To add files to merge videos
  - ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," select \*\*Options → Add\*\*
  - ② Perform ② to ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos"

### • To delete the file order for merging

- ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," use to highlight the file to delete
- **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### • To change the file order for merging

- ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," use ① to highlight the file to move
- ② Options → Change order
- ③ Use to highlight a personal folder or a file, highlight the file and press

# Create Flash®

Create Flash<sup>®</sup> images using still images saved in Pictures folder, already created Flash<sup>®</sup> images saved in Other documents folder, or still images previewed immediately after shooting; newly created Flash<sup>®</sup> images are saved to Other documents folder in Data Folder.

Press ■ (Menu) and Camera → Dynamic effect list

# Select files

# **3** Perform creation operations

### To add frame to image

- 1 Select [ (Frame)
- Select a frame

### To add icon to image

- 1 Select 🔞 (Icon)
- (2) Select an icon
- ③ Select  $Options \rightarrow Size$ , use to adjust size and press (Done)
- ④ Select Options → Rotate and use to adjust angle
- (5) Use to adjust position and press (Done)
- **6** Repeat **1** to **5** to add more icons

### To add text to image

- 1 Select [4] (Text)
- **2** Enter text
- ③ Options → Font size and adjust size and press (Done)
- **(4)** Options → Font color and use  $\Box$  to adjust color and press  $\Box$  (Done)
- (Done) Use to adjust the position and
- (a) Use to change scroll direction and press (Done)

### To add watch on image

- 1) Select (Watch)
- (2) Select the watch
- ③ Press (Done)

### To reset image during editing

- 1 Select 5 (Reset)
- (2) Select Yes

# 4 Press (Save)

# **5** Enter an image name

### Tip

- · To delete added frame/watch
  - 1 After Step 2, select [ (Frame) or ( (Watch)
  - 2 Press (Delete)
- To delete added icon(s)/text
  - 1 After Step 2, select (Icon) or (Text)
  - 2 Use to highlight more icons/text to delete
  - 3 Press (Delete)
  - 4 Press (Done)
- Available icon/text to add

Up to 5 icons/texts can be added.

- To create Flash® images using Data Folder images
  - ① Highlight image saved in Data Folder and select *Options* → *Dynamic Effect*
  - (2) Perform Steps 1 to 3 (SP.7-19) in "Create Flash®"

### Note

 $\bullet$  Created Flash  $^{\circledR}$  images cannot be sent as message.

# Attaching Images

Attach captured image or recorded video and send via S! Mail.

**]** After capturing, press  $\blacksquare$  (Send)  $\rightarrow$ 

As message
To send video

In image review, select  $Options \rightarrow Send \rightarrow As$  message

2 Enter an address, subject, text, etc., and send

### Tip

• To send a still image or video via Bluetooth® Select *Via bluetooth* in Step 1 (�P.12-5).

**Display Settings** 

# Standby Display Settings

# Wallpaper

Default Setting Pictures

Set an image, animation, Photo Slide or mPet world image to appear in Standby; hide image.

- **2** Perform operations to set

# To change settings

Select Pictures, Photo slide, mPet world image, or None

# To change the image of Pictures

- 1) Highlight *Pictures* and press (Edit)
- ② Select the save location of files and select a file
- 3 Press (Set)

# To set/edit the image of Photo slide

- 1) Select *Photo slide* and press . (Edit)
- ② Perform Steps 2 to 4 in "Setting Photo Slide" (❖P.8-2) or perform Steps 2 and 3 in "Editing Photo Slide" (❖P.8-3)
- 3 Press (Save)

### Tip

After setting mPet

mPet operations are enabled (�P.24-5). Press 

to show Standby as usual; various operations can be performed.

### Note

 With no pet selected in mPet, mPet world image cannot be set as Wallpaper.

# **Photo Slide**

- 2 Press (Add)
- 3 Select save location for the file, check the image to set and press (Done)

# To see preview

- 2 Press to close the preview

### To set effect

- 1 Use 🔲 to highlight Effect field
- ② Use 🚾 to toggle setting

# To change the switching duration per still image

- ① Use Duration field
- ②Use to highlight Effect field
- 4 Press (Set) and select *Yes* (crop sides) or *No* (show full image)

### Tip

• To adjust slide size

To display large in the window, select *Yes* in Step 4. To display in the original horizontal and vertical ratio, select *No*.

# **Editing Photo Slide**

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Photo slide*
- **2** Perform editing operations

# To edit still images

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Replace
- (2) Check a still image to set and press (Done)

# To change order of still images

- ① Highlight the still images to change order, select  $Options \rightarrow Change\ Order$
- ②Use To change order and press (Save)

# To delete a still image

Highlight the still image to delete, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

# To add a still image

- ① Highlight any part where a still image is not set and press : (Add)
- 2) Check a still image to add and press (Done)
- 3 Press (Set) and select Yes or No

# Tip

To adjust slide size
 To display large in the window, select Yes in Step 3. To display in the original horizontal and vertical ratio, select No.

# Clock Display

Default Setting Digital clock (Digital clock 7)

In Standby, select Digital clock, Dual clock, and Calendar to display. Alternatively, hide clock in Standby.

Press ■ (Menu) and select *Settings*→ *Display settings* → *Clock display* 

# **2** Select settings

# **Digital clock**

- 1 Select *Digital clock*
- 2) Press (Edit) and use to select clock type
- 3 Press

### **Dual clock**

- (1) Select *Dual clock*
- 2 Press (Edit)
- ③ Perform Step 3 in "Changing Home Time Zone" (♠P.1-20)

# To display calendar

Select Calendar

# To hide clock

Select Off

3 Press (Save)

### Tip

When Dual clock is set

Two clocks appear in Standby. Top time is that of the zone selected in "Changing Home Time Zone" (♠P.1-20) and bottom time is that of zone in which *Dual clock* was set.

# **Operator Name**

Default Setting = Off

In Standby, show or hide operator name.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Display settings  $\rightarrow$  Operator name
- **>** Select the setting and press **■** (Save)

# 🧷 Menu Display

# Menu Style

Default Setting Bicycle (Bicycle 2, Automatic)

Change menu appearance.

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Display settings  $\rightarrow$  Main menu style
- Perform operations to set

To set Bicycle

- (1) Select *Bicycle*
- 2) Use to change the type
- (3) Press and Use to change seasons

### To set Amoeba or Slider

- (1) Select *Amoeba* or *Slider*
- (2) Use to change the type

To set Black

Proceed to Step 4

- 3 Press
- 4 Press (Save)

# Popup Menu

Default Setting = Off

When active, sub menus appear in a popup window when a menu item is highlighted.

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

## Tip

• When an item with no sub menu is highlighted Nothing appears. Popup menus do not appear in *Alarms*.

# List Font Size

Default Setting = Large

Set main menu item font size.

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

# Zoom List

Default Setting Off

When active, highlighted menu items appear larger.

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

# Tip

• Effective Range

Zoom list applies only to items in sub-sub menus or lower. For example, select Settings  $\rightarrow$  *Call settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Voice call*  $\rightarrow$  *Diverts. Voice call* items appear zoomed.

# Backlight Brightness & Duration

- Adjusting Display Brightness
- 2 Use to adjust brightness and press (Save)
- Backlight Duration

Default Setting On: 15 seconds Dim: 5 seconds

Set backlight time. Display becomes dimmer when time set in *On* elapses and turns off when time set in *Dim* elapses.

# Select an item and make settings

# To set the time to light brightly

- (1) Select On field
- (2) Select the time to set and press

# To set the time till Display goes off

- (1) Select Dim field
- (2) Select the time to set and press

# ? Press : (Save)

# 🗷 Dialing Display

Default Setting = Font type: Quill pen

Appears when dialing in Standby. When character type is set to Normal or Serif, select font size, color and background color.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Display settings  $\rightarrow$  Dialling display
- Select an item and make settings

# To set font type

- (1) Select *Font type*
- **2**) Use **to** switch font type

### To set the font size

- (1) Select *Font size*
- **2**) Use **1** to select the size

### To set font color

- (1) Select *Font colour*
- (2) Use to select the setting

③ Use to move cursor to Color selection field and use to select a color (For *Monochrome* only)

# To set background color

- 1) Select *Background colour*
- ② Use 🗖 to select the color
- 3 Press (Save)

# Greeting Messages

Default Setting = Welcome to SoftBank

Change power on message for Display.

- **2** Edit power on message text

# Display Language

Default Setting ■日本語 (Japanese)

Set 705SC user interface to appear in English, Japanese, or Korean.

- Press (Menu) and select 設定 → 一般設定 → Language or 言語選択
- 2 Select *English* and press **(保存/** Save/저장)

# Sound Settings

# Changing Profile Settings

Change 705SC incoming transmission response by profile. In Car Profile, select Call answer mode.

In Standby, press 🍇 for 1+ seconds

2 Highlight a profile and press (Edit)

# To set Ringtone volume

- (1) Select *Ringtone volume* and select item to set
- 2 Use to adjust volume
- ③ Press : (Play) to confirm volume and press
- 4 Press (Save)

# To set Voice/Video Call ringtone

- (1) Select *Ringtone* and *Voice call* or *Video call*
- (2) Select the save location for files

- ③ Highlight a melody, select  $Options \rightarrow Play$
- 4 Press (Select)
- S Press (Save)

# To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS

- 1) Select Ringtone and Messages
- Select setting
- ③ Press (Play) to confirm ringtone and press
- 4 Press (Save)

## To set vibration

- 1 Select *Vibration* and select items
- 2 Select setting and press (Save)

# To set S! Mail/SMS ring duration

- 1 Select *Message ringtone duration*
- 2 Enter duration and press

# To set sound effect or key tone volume

- 1) Select *Key tone volume*
- ②Use to adjust volume and press (Save)

### To set Phone sounds

- 1) Select *Phone sounds*
- (2) Check items to set and press (Save)

# To set key tone

- (1) Select *Key tones*
- ② Select setting and press (Save)

# To set Car Profile answering method

- (1) Select *Call answer mode*
- ② Select setting and press (Save)

### Tip

- Ringtone volume
  - Select 
    for step-up ringer.
- Acoustic shock

Reduces ringer volume to Level 1 for the first two seconds.

Car Profile Call answer modes

If Anykey is set, press any key except  $\cdots$ ,  $\cdots$ ,  $\sigma$ , or Side Key  $\overline{\ \ }$  or  $\underline{\ \ }$ . If Automatic is set, use Speaker.

• To set Car Profile auto answer time

After ② in "To set Car Profile answering method" in Step 2, select *Automatic* and press (Edit); edit answer time and press ).

- To set Voice recorder recording as ringtone
   After ② in "To set ringtone" in Step 2, select amr file.
- To adjust the volume while 705SC rings Press Side Key or while 705SC rings.
- To turn ringer and vibration off

  Mute *Ringtone volume* and set *Vibration Off*; mute indicator ( ) appears.

# • To change ringtone title for S! Mail/SMS

- ① After ② in "To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS" in Step 2, highlight *Data Folder* and press : (Change)
- **2**) Select location to save the file
- 3 Highlight the file, select  $Options \rightarrow Play$
- (4) Press (Select)
- S Press (Save)
- To adjust key tone volume

In Standby, press Side Key or or .

# **☐** Sound settings

Change Normal Profile sound settings here.

# ➡ Profile settings

Available items vary by Profile. Defaults are as listed below.

—: Setting deactivated

Item Profi	e Normal	Manner	Car	Meeting	Outdoor	
Ringtone volume	Ringtone volume					
Voice call	Level 4	_	Level 4	Off	Level 5	
Video call	Level 4	_	Level 4	Off	Level 5	
Messages	Level 4	_	Level 4	Off	Level 5	
Ringtone	Ringtone					
Voice call	23 acapella.mmf	_	23 acapella.mmf	23 acapella.mmf	23 acapella.mmf	
Video call	Techno Dance.mp4	_	Techno Dance.mp4	Techno Dance.mp4	Techno Dance.mp4	
Messages	Pure	_	Pure	Pure	Pure	
Vibration						
Voice call	On	On	On	On	On	
Video call	On	On	On	On	On	
Messages	On	On	On	On	On	

Iten	Profile	Normal	Manner	Car	Meeting	Outdoor
Ring	Ringtone duration					
	Messages	5 Seconds	_	5 Seconds	5 Seconds	5 Seconds
Key	tone volume	Level 2	_	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Pho	ne sounds	Several tones On	Alerts on call	Several tones On	Alerts on call	Several tones On
Key	tones	Xylophone	_	Xylophone	Xylophone	Xylophone
Call	answer mode	_	_	Normal	_	_
Ans	wer machine	_	On	_	_	_

# **➡** Phone Sounds

Available items vary by Profile. Volume Level set in Key Tone Volume applies to all Phone Sounds.

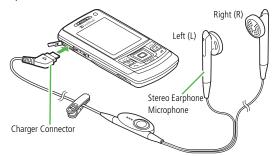
Item	Description	
All	Check/uncheck all items.	
Popup box alerts	Sounds for confirmations/warnings.	
Minute minder	Sounds about once a minute during calls.	
Call connect tone	Sounds when calls connect before called phone rings.	
Call end tone	Sounds when a call ends.	
Power on	Sounds when power turns on.	
Slide up/down	Sounds when handset is opened/closed.	
Alerts on call	Sounds for alarms/incoming transmissions.	

# Media Player

# Before Using Media Player

Play Data Folder sound/video files or stream online media.

- From Music or Video menu, select Download music or Download videos, to download files via Yahoo! Keitai.
- Use Stereo Earphone Microphone. Insert as shown below. Unplug Stereo Earphone Microphone to use Speaker.



Use Stereo Earphone Microphone to accept Voice Calls.
 When 705SC rings/vibrates, press switch for 1+ seconds to answer the call.

# **Playable File Formats**

Player	File (Extension)
IV/IIICIC	MP3 (.mp3), MPEG4 Audio (.mp4, 3gp (sound only)), WAV (.wav)
Video	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp)

### Tip

- Playback Restrictions
  - Only copy protected MP3/WAV files are playable.
- Other Playback Conditions
   Media Player will only play files described above saved in Sounds & Ringtones in Data Folder; select directly from Data Folder.

# Playing Music

In Standby, press

**>** Select files

To select from All music

Select All music and highlight the file

To select from Recent music

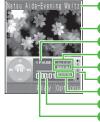
Select *Recent music* and highlight the file

To select from Most played music

Select *Most played music* and highlight the file

To playback using Playlist (♦P.10-7)

3 Press (Play)



Melody Player Window

- 1 Artist's name and title (File name when title is unknown)
- Skin
- 3 Status: PLAY, PAUSE, STOP
- ④ Repeat mode

  \_⊕ (Off), ⊄1⊋(One), c s ∋(Shuffle), ⊄⊕⊋(All)
- 5 File number/Total number of files
- 6 Playing volume
- 7 Total playing time
- 8 Elapsed playing time
- Progress bar

Tip

• To end playback and return to Options

Press Clear. In *Options*, press Clear to return to the previous menu or close *Options* menu.

Incoming calls

Playback pauses and 705SC rings; after call ends playback remains paused.

• Incoming messages

or appears and 705SC vibrates.

Alarm times

Playback pauses, Alarm sounds and details appear. Press any key to cancel alarm and resume playback; press another key to reopen Media Player window.

• Saving files as Ringtone

Highlight a file in list or from pause or stop, press (Set as) and select a function. Only valid files can be saved.

• Using other functions

Use Switch Bar (�P.1-22).

• To play last played track

In Standby, press prof 1+ seconds.

# • Memory Card Music Files

When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card music files appear in  $All\ music$  list, indicated by  $\blacksquare$ .

# 4 All music

Lists all playable files (up to 9999 files).

# **☐** Download music

Shortcut to download site.

# H Music search

Shortcut to *Music search*. site; search by genre or keyword.

# ☐ Recent music/Most played music

Most recently played file appears first in *Recent music*. Most frequently played file appears first in *Most played music*. Each list holds up to 100 records.

# ➡ Player Window & List Options

Available items vary by file type, etc.

Item	Description	
Send	Send file via S! Mail (�P.17-6) or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> (�P.12-5).	
Add	Add files to Playlist. Select <i>Playlist</i> to add all files contained in another Playlist. Select <i>Files</i> to add selected files to Playlist.	
Move track in playlist	Change order of files in Playlist.	
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.	
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.	
Add to playlist	Files in <i>All music</i> are added to Play List. Choose <i>Selected file</i> to add highlighted file, or <i>Multiple file</i> to add multiple files to Playlist.	
Play by	Play tracks by album, artist or genre.	
Delete	Delete a highlighted file or all files.	
Rename	Change file name.	
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.	

Item	Description
Details	Confirm file size, etc.
Stop	End playback.
Play via	In Player window, select Headphone or Speaker (♠ P.12-6) for sound output.
Transfer to A/V headset/Transfer to Phone	Select Headphone or Speaker (�P.12-6) as sound output source.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Create playlist	Create new Playlist (�P.10-6).
Rename	Change Playlist name.
Open playlist	Open Playlist.
Player settings	Adjust Media Player settings (◆P.10-7).

### Tip

 When Transfer to A/V headset is set Raise/lower volume from A/V headset.

# Playing Files from Playlists

# **Create Playlist**

Create up to 20 Playlists, containing up to 100 files each.

- **1** In Standby, press ♠, select *Options*→ *Create playlist*
- **2** Enter Playlist name
- **3** Select the created Playlist
- **4** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Add*  $\rightarrow$  *Files*
- 5 Check files to save and press (Save)

### Tip

- To create a Playlist from tracks in an existing one:
  - Perform Steps 1 to 3
  - **2** Options → Add → Playlist
  - 3 Select Playlist from which to add all melodies
- To change Playlist name
  - ① Highlight Playlist, select *Options* → *Rename*
  - 2 Enter Playlist name
- To delete selected Playlist
   Options → Delete → Selected → Yes
- To delete all Playlists
  - (1) Highlight Playlist, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow All$
  - (2) Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)
  - 3 Select Yes

# Play

Press to select Playlist to play, select  $Options \rightarrow Play$ 

# Changing Music Player Settings

# Repeat Mode

Default Setting = OFF

Play a single track repeatedly, all files in All music, or tracks from Playlist, randomly or repeatedly.

- Press  $\longrightarrow$ , select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Player* settings  $\rightarrow$  *Repeat mode*
- Select an item and press (Save)

# Tone Volume

- Press , select Options → Player settings → Tone volume
- 2 Use to adjust the volume and press (Save)

# Audio Skin

Default Setting = Rainbow wave

Set one of two images to appear while music plays.

- Press , select *Options* → *Player* settings → Audio Skin
- **>** Select the setting and press (Save)

# **Visualization Mode**

# Visualization On/Off

Default Setting =On

Activate or cancel this setting to apply or cancel Skin, Controller and Backlight settings while playing MPEG4 AAC or AAC+ files.

- Press  $\stackrel{\square}{\Longrightarrow}$ , select  $Options \rightarrow Player$  $settings \rightarrow Visualization \rightarrow$ Visualization mode
- **⊃** Select the setting and press [■] (Save)

# Skin, Show Controller, & Backlight

Default Setting = Skin: Flowers

■ Show controller: Show

■Backlight: Normal

Select one of ten skins to appear while music plays. Set Show controller to Hide for full screen view. Set Backlight to *Always on* to see skin with handset open.

- Press  $\square$ , select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Player* settings  $\rightarrow$  Visualization  $\rightarrow$  Skin, Show controller, or Backlight
- **>** Select the setting and press **□** (Save)

# Playing Video

Press (Menu) and select *Media*Player → Video

# Select files

From All Video

Select All Video and highlight the file

From Recent video

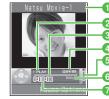
Select *Recent video* and highlight the file

From Most Played video

Select *Most Played video* and highlight the file

From Playlist (�P.10-7)

3 Press (Play)



Video Player Window

- 1 Artist's name and title (File name when the video title information is unknown)
- Playing status : PLAY/PAUSE/STOP
- 3 Progress bar
- 4 File no./Total number of files
- 6 Playing volume level
- 6 Total playing time
- 7 Elapsed playing time

### Tip

# • To set video file as Ringtone

Highlight paused file or one from list and press ☐ (Set as). Set file as Ringtone (�P.11-11). Valid only for compatible files.

### Playlist

- ① After Step 1, select *Options* → *Create playlist*
- (2) Perform Steps 2 to 5 in "Create Playlist" (4) P.10-6)

# • Memory Card Video Files

In list window of  $All\ Video$ , music files in Memory Card also appear. Those files are indicated by  $\ \blacksquare$  .

### All Video

All (up to 9999) playable files appear.

### □ Download videos

Shortcut to a download site.

# ☐ Recent video/Most Played video

Most recently played file appears first in *Recent video*. Most frequently played file appears first in *Most Played Video*. Each list holds up to 100 records.

# **☐ Player Window & List Options**

Select *Options* in Player window or list and perform operations listed below. Available items vary by file type, etc.

Item	Description
Full screen view	Play video in full screen view.
Add	Add files to Playlist. Select Playlist to add all files contained in another Playlist. Select individual files to add to Playlist.
Move track in playlist	Change order of files in Playlist.
Stop	End video playback.
Edit	Edit video files ( P.7-18).
Resolution	Set video display size.
Send	Send file via S! Mail (�P.17-6) or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> (�P.12-5).
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming link saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a page containing a streaming link already accessed.

Item	Description	
Add to playlist	Add a file to Playlist in <i>All Video</i> . Select <i>Selected file</i> to add highlighted file to Playlist. Select <i>Multiple file</i> to add multiple files.	
Delete	Delete a highlighted file or all files.	
Rename	Change file name.	
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.	
Details	Confirm file size, etc.	
Play via	In Player window, select Headphone or Speaker (�P.12-6) for sound output.	
Transfer to A/V headset/Transfer to Phone	Select Headphone or Speaker (◆P.12-6) as sound output source.	
Create Playlist	Create new Playlist (◆P.10-6).	
Rename	Change Playlist name.	
Player settings	Adjust Media Player settings (�P.10-11).	

# Player Settings

# Repeat Mode

# Default Setting =Off

Play a file repeatedly or files in a folder randomly/ repeatedly.

- Press (Menu) and select *Media*Player → Video
- 2 Highlight a file and press (Play)
- 3 Select Options → Player settings → Repeat mode
- 4 Select the setting and press (Save)

# Tone Volume

- Press (Menu) and select *Media* player  $\rightarrow Video$
- 2 Highlight a file and press (Play)
- 3 Select Options → Player settings →
  Tone volume
- 4 Use to adjust the volume and press (Save)

# Resolution

Adjust video size during playback or while paused.

- Press (Menu) and select *Media*Player → Video
- 2 Highlight a file and press (Play)
- 3 Select *Options* → *Resolution* and select a size

# Managing Files (Data Folder)

11

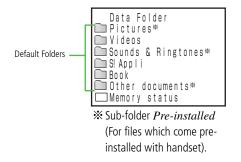


# Data Folder

705SC files are organized in folders by file format.

# **Default Folders**

Data Folder contains six default folders; new files are saved to the appropriate folder (see right). Create additional folders as required.



Folder	Description	File Formats <sup>1</sup>
Pictures	All still images	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
<b>Ⅳ</b> Videos	All videos	MPEG4 (3GP, MP4)
Sounds & Ringtones	All sounds recorded with Voice Recorder, downloaded music, and other sound files	● SMAF/MIDI/SP-MIDI, WAV <sup>2</sup> , → MP3 <sup>2</sup> /MPEG4 Audio, ■ AMR
S! Appli	S! Appli	JAVA
<b>■</b> Book	Save downloaded electronic comic/ photo book files	CCF
Other documents	Documents, graphics/ animation requiring File Viewer for display; Flash <sup>®</sup> files, vFiles, etc. are saved here	SWF, SVG, vCard, vCalendar, PDF, DOC, TXT, TXT, Unsupported files

- 1 Copy or move sorted files to other folders as required.
- 2 Only copy protected files can be saved.

### Tip

Savable number of files/folders
 Up to 999 files/folders can be saved each Default Folder.

### Hemory status

Select to view memory usage of each Data Folder. Alternatively, use setup menu to view memory status (�P15-9).

### □ Download links

appears in Data Folder for download site shortcut. Select shortcut to connect to the download site.

# **⊞** When Memory Card inserted

In Data Folder, press (Memory) to open Memory Card Data Folder. appears. Memory Card Data Folder and Data Folder structure are the same. Press (Phone) to return to Data Folder.

### □ Download Book feature

In Data Folder, Use *Download Book* in Book Folder as a download site shortcut. Select it to open the site.

# Saved Files

# Opening Files

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- Select the folder where a file is saved
- Highlight a file and press (View/Play/Select)

### Tip

- To use Slide Show
  - (1) Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display images
  - (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Slide show
- To enlarge or reduce image
  - (1) Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display an image
  - (2) Options → Zoom
  - ③ Press ( ( ( ), ), or to enlarge, reduce, or scroll the image
  - (4) Press Clear to return to the previous window

### · After enlarging/reducing image

After ② in "To enlarge or reduce image," press [::] (ⓐ) to open list window.

Press ( ) to change window view; select another file.

### • File List Indicators

w: Nontransferable

: Nontransferable & unusable

(a): Encrypted

: Copy Protected file (Transferable, Content Key valid)

: Copy Protected file (Transferable, Content Key expired)

: Copy Protected file (Nontransferable, Content Key valid)

: Copy Protected file (Nontransferable, Content Key expired)

: Set as Wallpaper (◆P.11-10)

Lambda: Set as Ringtone (◆P.11-11)

When another USIM Card is inserted into 705SC
 Only preinstalled nontransferable/copy protected files are usable.

• To show image in full screen view

After Step 3, select *Options* → *Full screen view*. For partial image, use to change display area. Press

(Rotate) to rotate the image. Press to return to previous view.

• To view File Details

Options → Details

### Note

 Files over 3 MB cannot be opened. Files larger than 1600 x 1200 pixels cannot be edited or zoomed.
 Files over 1.3 MB cannot be set as Incoming image or Substitute Image.

# → Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

Select *Options* → *Take photo*; activate Camera in Camera mode by highlighting the Pictures folder or an image file captured by 705SC.

Select *Options* → *Record video*; activate Camera in Video mode by highlighting the Videos folder or a video captured by 705SC.

Select *Options* → *Record sound*; activate Voice Recorder by highlighting the Sounds & Ringtones folder or sound file captured by 705SC.

# Using File Viewer

Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder; File Viewer activates automatically. Select Normal View or Full Screen View; navigate files via *Options* or shortcuts.



Folder



Press (Menu) and select Data

**>** Select file location then file

# 3 Select *Options*/navigation shortcuts to navigate

### To scroll

Press 🔀

# To change Display appearance

*Options* → *Full screen view* or *Normal view* 

# To enlarge or reduce the image

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Zoom
- 2 Press *In* or *Out* to enlarge/reduce

# To fit document size to Display

*Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Fit to screen* 

# To move a page

 $Options \rightarrow Go \ to \ and \ select \ an \ item$ 

# To move to specified page

- ①  $Options \rightarrow Go \ to \rightarrow Page$
- 2 Enter page number

# To capture current screen image

Select Screen capture

# To rotate image 90 degrees clockwise

- $\bigcirc$  *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Rotate*
- ② *Options* → *Rotate* to return to the previous window

# To search words in the page

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Search
- (2) Enter words
- ③ Press distribution to continue searching forward or press to continue searching backward, for the same word

# To view assigned shortcut keys

*Options* → *FileViewer shortcuts* 

### Tip

After capturing

Captured files are saved in *Other documents* in 705SC Data Folder (Phone) as JPEG format.

# **File Viewer Settings**

Default Setting Panning: 10 pixel Reflow: Off
Map on: On Controller: On
Name: Capture

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- Select save location and select the file
- **3** Select *Options* → *Settings*
- 4 Perform operations to set

To assign scroll range per press of

- 1 Select Panning
- (Save)

### To set auto scroll

- 1) Select *Reflow*
- 2) Select the setting and press (Save)

# To set Map (shows display position) on/off

- 1 Select Map on
- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

# To set guide for shortcuts in Full screen view

- $\bigcirc$  *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Controller*
- ② Select the setting and press (Save)

# To change default file mane

- 1 Select *Name*
- 2 Enter a name

### Tip

# • When Reflow is On

Fit text width (such as doc. or txt.) to 705SC window width. No need to scroll right/left to show the contents.

## • When Map on is On

In bottom right of the window, map showing the current position/area in the whole page appears. The current position/area is indicated in red frame.

# Navigation Shortcuts

Key	Description
Side Key 📵	Zoom in
Side Key 🛽	Zoom out
2 abc	Move to the first page
4 ghi	Move to the previous page
5 <sup>‡</sup> <sub>jkl</sub>	Rotate 90 degrees clockwise or cancel
6 mno	Move to the next page
8tuv	Move to the final page
Select Normal View or Full Screen V	

# ☐ Confirmation Window & List Options

For items other than window operation options, see "Data Folder Options" (�P.11-13).

### Note

- If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.
- If a file includes any language other than Japanese or English, that file may not appear properly.

# Viewing Graphics/Animation with the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer

View SVG, SVGZ, and SWF formatted files in Data Folder. When one of these files is selected from Data Folder list, the SVG-T/Flash<sup>®</sup> Viewer is automatically launched.

View the graphics/animation on Normal View or Full Screen View. In either mode, *Options* and shortcut (Key operations) are available to control Display.



Normal View



**Full Screen View** 

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- **2** Select file location then file

# 3 Select *Options*/navigation shortcuts to navigate

#### To change Display appearance

*Options* → *Full screen view* or *Normal view* 

#### To enlarge or reduce the image

- $\textcircled{1} Options \rightarrow Zoom$
- ② Press (♠) to enlarge an image or (♠) to reduce
- 3 Use to scroll the window
- 4 Press to return to the previous window

## To pause or restart an flash® image

 $Options \rightarrow Pause \text{ or } Resume$ 

#### To select image quality

 $Options \rightarrow Quality$  and select an item

# To rotate the screen 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise

*Options* → *Rotate* and select an item

#### Tip

• To set an image for Wallpaper

Press ::: (Set as) on Normal View, or in *Options* of Full Screen View, select *Set as* and select *Wallpaper*.

#### **☐** Confirmation Window & List Options

For items other than window operation options, see "Data Folder Options" ( P.11-13).

# Sorting Files

Sort files in various ways.

Select  $Options \rightarrow Sort by$ 

**>** Select an item

To sort files in descending order of dates

Select *Date* 

To sort files by file types

Select Type

To sort files by file names

Select Name

To sort files in ascending order of size

Select Size

To sort files by status of Content Key

Select Activation Status

#### Tip

· When folders are listed

Folders appear at the top of list.

• When sorted by *Type* 

Files appear in alphabetical order by file extension (e.g., doc, ipg, swf, and such).

• When sorted by Name

Files appear by file name: numbers → alphanumerics → Japanese syllabary

• When sorted by Activation status

Files appear as follows:

Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy Protected (Content Key valid) → Copy Protected (Content Key expired)

# Using Files

# Wallpaper

Set an image file as Wallpaper of Display, an image in Phonebook, or a Substitute Image for Video Calls to display with incoming calls.

Highlight a file and press (Set as)

To set while viewing an image

Highlight a file, press  $\hfill \blacksquare$  (View) and press  $\hfill \blacksquare$  (Set as)

2 Set the Use of the File

To set as Wallpaper on Display

Select *Wallpaper*, confirm the preview and press

(Set)

# To set as Phonebook image for use with an incoming call

- (1) Select *Caller ID*
- ② Search and select an entry in which to place the image and press (Set)

# To set as Substitute Image for use with an incoming call

- 1 Select TV call Still picture
- 2 Press (Save)

#### Tip

- When setting Memory Card file Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.
- To edit a still image (€P.7-16)
- To create a mobile postcard (�P.7-6)
- To print a still image (◆P.12-11)

# Setting Sound File as Ringtone

Change ringtone settings in current profile (◆P.3-3).

- Press (Menu), select *Data Folder* and select location to save the file
- 2 Highlight the file and press : (Set as)
- 3 Set ringtone

To set ringtone for Voice Calls

Select *Voice ringtone* 

To set ringtone for Video Calls

Select Video ringtone

To set ringtone for Phonebook entries

- 1) Select *Caller ringtone*
- **2**) Search Phonebook and select an entry

To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS

Select *Message alert tone* 

#### Tip

- When setting Memory Card file
   Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.
- Player Restrictions
   Only copy protected MP3 files or WAV files are playable.
   Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files are playable.

# Setting Video File as Ringtone

Change ringtone settings in current profile (◆P.3-3).

- Press (Menu), select *Data Folder* and select location to save the file
- Pighlight the file and press (Set as)

# 3 Set ringtone

To set video file as ringtone for Voice Call

Select Voice ringtone

To set video file as ringtone for Video Call

Select Video ringtone

To set ringtone for Phonebook entries

Select *Caller ringtone* 

#### Tip

#### • Restrictions

Only copy protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set.

# Setting Flash® file as Wallpaper

- P Highlight the file, press (Set as)
- 3 Select Wallpaper
- 4 Check preview window and press

  (Set)

# Saving a vFile

vFile is the standard format to exchange Phonebook data, etc. via the Internet. 705SC uses vCard (extension: vcf) format for Phonebook data; also uses vCalendar (extension: vcs) format for Schedule/To Do data.

Save a vFile stored in Data Folder to Phonebook, calendar, or as a scheduled event.

- Press (Menu), select *Data Folder* and select save location for the vFile
- 2 Select a file and press (Register)

# Data Folder Options

Options vary by file or folder.

For File Viewer or SVG-T/Flash<sup>®</sup> Viewer *Options*, see "Using File Viewer" (♠P.11-5) or "Viewing a Graphics/ Animation with the SVG-T/Flash<sup>®</sup> Viewer" (♠P.11-8).

Item	Description
Edit	Edit a still image or Videos (�P.7-16).
Dynamic Effect/	Create Flash <sup>®</sup> images using Still images
Dynamic effect list	( <b>◆</b> P.7-19).
Full screen view	Display Still image in full screen (�P.11-5).
Playback	Playback video files. When playback display, select <i>Phone</i> to sound from speaker. Select <i>A/V headset</i> to sound from Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> -compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) (�P.12-6).
Transfer to A/V headset	Switch sound output to Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) (�P.12-6).
Register to phonebook	Export a vCard file to Phonebook (�P.11-12).

Item	Description
Register to	Export a vCalendar file to Calendar
Calendar	( <b>●</b> P.11-12).
Send	Send file via S! Mail (♠P.17-6) or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> (♠P.12-5).
mPostcard	Create a mobile postcard (◆P.7-6).
Zoom	Enlarge or reduce still image being confirmed (◆P.11-3).
Browser access	Access linked site included in electronic comic/photo book files.
Memory Card/	With Memory Card, select to display
handset	Memory Card/handset Data Folder.
Sort by	Sort files (�P.11-9).
Move	Move files from/to 705SC another folder
	(Phone) or to Memory Card.
Сору	Copy files and paste from/to 705SC
	another folder (Phone) or to Memory Card.
	With Memory Card inserted, select save
Set default	location for still images, videos,
memory	downloaded files. Select save location each
	time the setting is set to <i>Always ask</i> .

Item	Description
Add to playlist	Add files to Playlist. Highlight <i>Selected</i> and select to add a file. Highlight <i>Multiple</i> and select to add multiple files at once.
Delete	Delete a file/files (�P.11-18).
Delete folder	Delete a folder (◆P.11-18).
Take photo	Activate Camera in Camera mode (◆P.11-4).
Record video	Activate Camera in Video mode (◆P.11-4).
Record sound	Activate Voice Recorder (�P.11-4).
Rename	Change file name (◆P.11-15).
Rename folder	Change folder name (◆P.11-15).
Show/Hide file info	In List window for Picture Folder with thumbnail view, set to display folder/file name when highlighted.
View By	Select List window type for Picture Folder. Select <i>List</i> to show folder/file in list view. Select <i>Thumbnail view</i> to show folder/file in thumbnail view.
Create folder	Create a new folder (◆P.11-14).
Print via	Print Still images or vFiles using the printer via USB/Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> connection.

Item	Description
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Details	Confirm file/folder properties.
Memory card settings	In Memory Card Data Folder window with Memory Card inserted; check details information, format, and change names (◆P.11-23, 11-23, 11-22).
Content key info	Show the list of Content Keys for the files in Data Folder; manage them by selecting <i>Delete</i> to delete (�P.11-19) or <i>Details</i> to check the details.

# Managing Files/Folders

# Create Folder

Create a personal folder in the default folders or create sub-folders.

Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder

- 2 Select a folder, select *Options* → *Create folder*
- 3 Enter a name

# Changing a File Name/Folder Name

Change the name of a file or personal folder.

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- 2 Highlight a personal folder or a file, select *Options* → *Rename folder* or *Rename*
- 3 Enter a name

#### Tip

When a file is locked
 You cannot change the file name.

# Moving a File/Folder

Move a file/personal folder to another folder or a location outside folders. Alternatively, with Memory Card inserted, move folders between 705SC (Phone) and Memory Card.

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- Property Highlight a personal folder or a file, select *Options* → *Move*
- **3** Move file or folder

To move one file or all files in the same folder or all personal folders

Select Selected or All

#### To select and move multiple files or folders

- 1) Select Multiple
- ② Check files or personal folders to move and press (Move)

# **4** Select destination folder → *Move* here

#### With Memory Card inserted

- 1 Select *Phone* or *Memory*
- (2) Select destination folder and select *Move here*

#### Tip

- To check/uncheck all files or folders at once Press ::: (Mark all) or :: (Unmark all)
- When a file is locked File cannot to be moved.
- When target file/folder with the same name exists
   Change file/folder name; enter new name in message text.
- When file is set as Display images or Ringtones
  When moving a file to Memory Card, confirmation appears.
  Select Yes to move file and cancel setting.
  When moving multiple files to Memory Card, confirmation appears. Select Yes to move all files and cancel settings.
  Select No to move all files except those used in settings.
  Press Color to cancel.

#### Note

- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or when a different USIM Card is inserted in 705SC.
- Nontransferable and unusable files (¼x), encrypted files ( ♠), or nontransferable and copy protected files ( ๗, ๗) cannot be moved to Memory Card.
- Nontransferable files ( ) are saved as nontransferable and copy protected files ( ) when moved to Memory Card.

# Copying Files/Folders

Make a copy of a file or folder in another folder or a location outside folders. Alternatively, with Memory Card inserted, copy folders between 705SC and Memory Card.

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- 2 Highlight a personal folder or file, select *Options* → *Copy*

# **3** Copy file or folder

To copy one file or all files in the same folder or all folders

Select Selected or All

#### To select and copy multiple files or folders

- 1 Select *Multiple*
- ② Check files or folders to copy and press (Copy)

# 4 Select destination folder and select Paste here

#### With Memory Card inserted

- 1 Select *Phone* or *Memory*
- ② Select the destination folder and select *Paste* here

#### Tip

- To check/uncheck all files or folders at once (♠P.11-16)
- When a copy of a file or folder is pasted to the same location as the original

The pasted file or folder is saved under another name, i.e., \_001 is automatically added to the name.

When target file/folder with the same name exists
 Change file/folder name; enter new name in message text.

#### Note

Nontransferable/copy protected files cannot be copied.

# Deleting a File/Folder

#### **Delete**

Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder

- 2 Highlight a file, select *Options* → *Delete*
- **3** Delete the file

To delete one file

Select Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

To delete all files from the same folder

- (1) Select *All*
- ② Enter Phone Password press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

To select and delete multiple files

- 1 Select *Multiple*
- (Delete)
- ③ Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm) (If all files are checked)
- 4 Select Yes

#### Tip

- To check/uncheck files or folders at once (♠P.11-16)
- If a file is set as Wallpaper or ringtone, or locked Confirmation appears; select Yes to delete file. When deleting multiple files, select No to delete unset/unprotected files only.
- When file has Content Key
   Confirmation appears; select Yes to delete file and Content Key.

#### **Delete Folder**

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- 2 Highlight a personal folder, select Options → Delete folder
- 3 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

With no file saved in a personal folder, Phone Password is not required.

#### Tip

 If a folder contains files set as Wallpaper, ringtones, or locked/copy protected files

A confirmation message appears. Select Yes to execute folder deletion. Select No to delete only files without designated uses or protection, leaving the folder undeleted.

When file in a folder has Content Key

A confirmation message appears. Select  $\emph{Y}\!\emph{es}$  to delete both the file and Content Key.

# Deleting a Content Key

- Press (Menu) and select *Data*Folder
- **2** Select *Options* → *Contents key info*
- **?** Perform operations to delete

To delete a Content Key

Select Selected

To delete all Content Keys

Select Delete all

# Memory Card

705SC is compatible with microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card.
Purchase microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

#### Note

- Protect important information
   SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting
   from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep
   a copy of Phonebook entries, etc. in a separate
   place.
- microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

#### Tip

Memory Card size
 SoftBank recommends the use of 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, or 1 GB cards.

# Precautions

Note the following precautions regarding microSD™ Memory Card usage and care.

- To reduce risk of malfunction, use only recommended microSD™ Memory Card sizes.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.

# Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.

### Inserting

] Open cover



2 With contacts side up, insert Memory Card until it clicks



3 Close cover

# Removing

Open cover, gently push down on card until it clicks



# 2 Take your finger off and card popped out, remove card



# 3 Close cover

#### Tip

- Inserting & removing during operations
   In microSD™ Memory Card Data Folder window, removing
   Memory Card displays Phone Data Folder window.
- To back-up data to Memory Card (�P.11-15, 11-17)

#### Note

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/ removing Memory Card.
- Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.
- Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts before inserting/removing a Memory Card.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

# Rename Memory Card

The displayed name on Memory Card details window can be changed.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Memory settings  $\rightarrow$  Memory card
  - → Rename memory card
- 2 Enter a name

# Memory Card Details

Confirm name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.

- **1** Press **■** (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - → Memory settings → Memory card
  - → *Memory card details*

# Format Memory Card

- 1 Press (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Memory settings  $\rightarrow$  Memory card
  - → Format memory card
- **2** Enter Phone password, press
  - (Confirm) and select Yes

# External Connections

# External Connections

Exchange files wirelessly with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible devices, or connect to PCs or printers via USB cable.

# Bluetooth®

Exchange files wirelessly with Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices or use a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> handsfree device for calls. Use Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> to connect PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc.

# Before Using Bluetooth®

Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> transmissions require Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible devices with the same profiles.

### 705SC Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> specifications:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Standard Version 1.2
Applicable profiles	Headset Handsfree Serial Port Dialup Networking File Transfer Object Push Advanced Audio Distribute Audio/Video Remote Control Basic Imaging Basic Printing <sup>1</sup>
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class2
Line-of-signal distance <sup>2</sup>	Approximately 10 meters or less
Frequency band used	2.4 GHz

<sup>1</sup> For Printing function only.

<sup>2</sup> Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

# **Bluetooth® Precautions**

- 705SC may not work with all Bluetooth® devices.
- File transfers may not possible with some Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device.
- The 2.4GHz band used by Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> devices is used by other devices that may reduce transmission rates/ distance.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices/the environment.
- 705SC does not support multiple Bluetooth® connections.
- USB and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> cannot be used at the same time.
- Cancel Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> before connecting USB cable.

#### Tip

- To check Bluetooth® functions available
  - ① Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select Settings  $\rightarrow$  Connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth service
  - (2) Select an item and view the contents
- To confirm the device address of 705SC

Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Connectivity*  $\rightarrow$  *Bluetooth*  $\rightarrow$  *My Information* 

# Sending & Receiving Files

Send and receive Phonebook entries, My Phonebook details, Schedule information, Task information, still images, video, sound files, vFiles, and others.

#### **Activation**

Default Setting = Off

Activating Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> makes 705SC visible to other devices; appears at the top of Display.

- **2** Select the setting

#### **Search New Device**

Save up to 10 devices to My devices list. Enter the same Passkey on both 705SC and the device.

Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

- **?** Select Search new device
- 3 When devices appear, select device to save
- 4 Enter 4-16 digit Passkey and press
- 5 Within 20 seconds, enter the same passkey on the other device

#### Tip

#### Passkey

The Passkey is a password used to connect Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter the Passkey specified for it. You are not required to enter the Passkey again for a registered device.

- If authentication with the other device has failed A confirmation appears; select *Yes* to retry.
- If ten devices have already been registered
   A confirmation appears; to replace, select Yes then the device to delete.
- To check Bluetooth® functions available for each device
  - ① Press (Menu) and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
  - **②** Highlight a device, select *Options* → *Service list*
  - ③ Highlight an item, select Options → Help and view the contents
- . To change the name of a registered device
  - ① Press (Menu) and select Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth → My devices
  - **2** Highlight a device, select  $Options \rightarrow Rename$
  - 3 Enter a new name

- To delete a device from My devices
  - (1) Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Connectivity*  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  My devices
  - (2) Highlight a device, select *Options* → *Delete* → Selected or All
  - (Confirm) (In the case of All only) and select Yes
- To search for or register a device from other Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible devices (�P.12-9)

#### ☐ My devices list indicators

Device name is preceded by one of these indicators:

: Personal Computer : Mobile phone

: Handsfree device/Headset

-: PDA

🖳 : Printer 📭 : Other

#### 

If connection request appears, select Yes and enter valid Passkey within 20 seconds.

Connection requests from saved devices are connected automatically.

# **Sending Files**

Send via function *Options* menu. Transfer begins as soon as receiving device accepts it and 705SC goes offline.

### Select file to send

#### To send files from Data Folder

- 1 Highlight the data to send
- (2) In list window, select  $Options \rightarrow Send \rightarrow Via$ bluetooth

#### To send files from other functions

- (1) In list window, highlight the data to send
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Send  $\rightarrow$  Via bluetooth

# Select receiving device

#### If receiving device has not been set

Select Service new device, search for that device and set it (◆P.12-4)

#### Tip

Sending from Details or Playback windows
 Some functions allow sending option from Details/Playback window.

# Receiving a File

When connection from the sender is approved, file reception starts and the received file is saved in Data Folder.

When confirmation window appears, select *Yes* 

#### A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones.

- Play files via Media Player (⊕P.10-3, 10-9)
- 2 Select Options → Transfer to A/V headset

# 3 Select receiver's device

#### To save device

Select *Search new device* and save device (**9**P.12-4)

#### Tip

- While Melody is stopped
  - In Melody Playback window, select *Options* → *Play via* → *A/V headset*
  - ② Select the destination device or *Search new device* and search the device to register (�P.12-4)

# **Print Data Folder Image Files**

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible printer to 705SC; print Still images/vFiles in Data Folder directly. Set paper size/number on 705SC.

See printer User Guide for printer operations/settings.

In Data Folder list window, highlight still image/vFile

2 Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Print via*  $\rightarrow$  *Bluetooth* 

**?** Select receiver's device

To register receiver's device

Select *Search new device* to search and register (**②**P.12-4)

**4** Perform operations to set

To set a paper size

Select Paper size and the setting

To set the number of copies

Select *Number of copies*, enter the number of copies (1 to 99) and press

To set the number of pages to print on a sheet

Select *Paper per sheet* and the setting (1 to 16)

To set whether or not to print the date

Select Date print and the setting

To set whether or not to print a frame

Select *Border* and the setting

#### To set a print quality

Select *Print quality* and the setting

- **5** Press (Preview)
- 6 Check the preview window and press (Print)

## **Accessing Connected Device Files**

Access the shared folders and files of the other party's device. Alternatively, receive or delete data residing on the other device.

- **>** Select a device
- 3 Approve access on source device

#### Tip

 To receive an accessed file After Step 3, select a file to receive.

#### Locations of received files

Received files are automatically saved to Data Folder. The type of the folder that a file is saved to vary by file format; for example, JPEG and BMP files are saved to the Pictures folder and vFiles to the Other documents folder.

# **Connecting Handsfree Devices**

Save a handsfree device following the steps for "Search for and Register a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-Compatible Device" (◆P.12-4) beforehand.

# Waiting Connection Request

In the steps given below, 705SC is placed in mode waiting for a handsfree-device connection request.

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  My devices
- Select a handsfree-compatible device When Passkey entry window appears Enter the same Passkey as is set for the handsfree device

## **Answering Mode**

Default Setting Normal

If the setting is changed to *Automatic* a call to 705SC will be answered without the operation of any keys.

# 2 Select the setting

#### Tip

To set the time (Seconds) before automatic reception

After Step 1, highlight *Automatic*, select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit* and select the number of seconds to ring before answering.

#### **Handsfree Mode**

Default Setting = Handsfree Mode

Select answer settings for calls when handsfree devices connected.

# **2** Select the setting

#### Tip

- While Private Mode is set
  - Answer outgoing/incoming calls with 705SC for calls made with 705SC; answer outgoing/incoming calls with handsfree devices for calls made with handsfree devices.
- While Handsfree Mode is set
  Answer all outgoing/incoming calls with handsfree devices.

# Changing Bluetooth® Settings

# My Phone's Visibility

Default Setting ■On

To activate search and saving from other Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>-compatible devices, you have to make your 705SC visible.

12

**?** Select the setting Bluetooth® Name

Default Setting = 705SC

The displayed name shown on another device for your 705SC can be changed.

Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$  My Information

**Select** *Bluetooth Name* 

☐ Modify the name and press ☐

#### Secure Mode for Data Transfer

Default Setting =On

If set On, a confirmation message appears before you sending data.

Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Connectivity  $\rightarrow$  Bluetooth  $\rightarrow$ Secure mode

Select the setting

# USB Connection

Connect 705SC to a PC via USB cable to transfer files between devices. Alternatively, connect a printer to print still images.

# Connecting to a PC

Perform the following:

- Transfer 705SC Data Folder files to a PC
- Import PC files and save to Data Folder
- Perform packet data communications

# **Before Using the USB Connection**

Install USB driver and Samsung PC Studio beforehand. For more about installation, PC operating environment, etc., see attached CD-ROM User Guide.

# Connecting to a Printer

Connect 705SC to a PictBridge-compatible printer with a USB cable and print still images directly from Data Folder. Set paper size, number of prints, and other items on 705SC.

For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see the printer's User Manual.

# **Printing a Still Image from Data Folder**

- Highlight an image file in Data Folder
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Print via*  $\rightarrow$  *USB*
- 3 Connect 705SC to printer via USB cable
- **4** Select printer settings

To set paper size

Select *Paper size* and select the setting

To set number of prints

Select *Number of copies*, enter number (1 to 99) and press

To set the number of pages to print on a sheet

Select *Paper per sheet* and the setting (1 to 16)

To set whether or not to print the date

Select Date print and select the setting

To set whether or not to print a frame

Select Border and select the setting

12

#### To set a print quality

Select *Print quality* and select the setting

5 Press

6 Check the preview window and press (Print)

#### Note

Never disconnect the USB cable during printing.

# 🗾 Mass storage

With Memory Card inserted, connect 705SC to a PC via USB cable; exchange files with PC via Memory Card.

# Connecting to a PC

- 2 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm)
- **?** Connect 705SC to a PC via USB cable
- **4** Exchange files with PC

#### Tip

• While Mass storage is active *Offline mode* is activated.

- Disconnecting from a PC
- While connecting, press (Exit)
- 2 From the PC, perform operations to disconnect hardware devices
- 3 Unplug the USB cable

#### Note

• Never unplug the USB cable during disconnecting.

# Security

13

# Change Phone Password

#### Default Setting = 9999

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Security  $\rightarrow$  Change phone password
- **Enter current Phone Password and** press (Confirm)
- **Enter new 4-digit Phone Password** and press (Confirm)
- Enter new Phone Password again and press (Confirm)

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For more information, see "USIM Card" (◆P.1-2).

# **Changing PIN/PIN2**

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Security  $\rightarrow$  Change PIN code or Change PIN2 code
- **Enter current PIN or PIN2 and press** (Confirm)
- **?** Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) and press (Confirm)
- Enter new PIN or PIN2 again and press ■ (Confirm)

 When PIN lock (♠P.13-3) is set to Disable, PIN cannot be changed.

# PIN Lock

Default Setting Enable

To require PIN authentication each time the power is turned on, set this function to *Enable*.

- **2** Select the setting and press (Save)
- **3** Enter PIN and press **■** (Confirm)

# Resetting PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is been incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN or PIN2 lock is set, restricting operations of 705SC. Unlock PIN or PIN2 lock.

- In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code and press (Confirm)
- 2 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) and press
- Enter new PIN or PIN2 again and press

#### Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact Customer Service (♠P.25-25).
- If incorrect PUK Code is entered ten consecutive times, USIM Card is locked (turning 705SC off does not reset count).
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (◆P.25-25).

# JUSIM Lock

Default Setting Disable

Activate to disable 705SC unless USIM password is entered whenever a different USIM Card is installed.

- Press (Menu) and select Settings

  → Security → USIM lock
- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)
- 3 Enter a USIM password (4 to 8 digits) and press **■** (Confirm)

To set Disable

Setting is saved and operation complete.

To set *Enable* 

Proceed to Step 4

4 Enter the USIM password again and press (Confirm)

#### Tip

#### USIM password

This is a password dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If the USIM password matches, the other USIM Card can also be used for 705SC.

Change USIM password each time the USIM check setting is set to *Enable*.

When you forget your USIM password
 Insert a USIM Card (with USIM lock set to *Enable*) to 705SC and execute All reset (◆P.13-11).

# Handset Security

## Phone Lock

#### Default Setting Disable

Set *Phone lock* to *Enable*; then Phone Password entry is required each time the power is turned on.

- **2** Select the setting and press (Save)
- Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)

## Password Lock

#### Default Setting Disable

Set *Password lock* to *Enable*; then hide Softkeys in Standby. Press any key; Phone Password entry window appears. Enter Phone Password to cancel Password lock; 705SC operations are enabled.

- **2** Select the setting and press (Save)
- Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)

 When Password lock is canceled Password lock is automatically set to Disable.

## **Privacy Lock**

Default Setting Unlock all

Activate to require Phone Password entry to open All. Messages, Data Folder, Phonebook, Call log or Calendar.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Security  $\rightarrow$  Privacy lock
- Check the functions to lock and press (Save)
- **?** Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)

## **Activate Secret Mode**

Default Setting = Hide

Activate Secret Mode to hide Secret Phonebook entries.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings* → Security → Activate Secret mode
- **Enter Phone Password and press** (Confirm)
- **?** Select the setting and press **□** (Save)

#### Tip

 Under following conditions, 705SC turns the setting to Hide: Activate Secret mode is set to Show then 705SC is powered on again.

#### **Mobile Tracker**

Default Setting = Off

Activate to receive notification whenever a different USIM Card is inserted. Enter up to two SMS addresses via which to receive notification.

- → Security → Mobile tracker
- **Enter Phone Password and press** (Confirm)
- Select Activation field
- Select On and press  $\square$  (Select)
- **5** Select Recipients field and enter an address

#### To select an address from Phonebook

- (1) Highlight To field and select *Options* → Phonebook
- (2) Search Phonebook and select an entry (♠P.5-9)
- (3) Highlight phone number and press (Select)

#### To enter a phone number directly

- (1) Highlight To field and select  $Options \rightarrow Direct$ input
- (2) Enter phone number
- Press (Done)
- Select Sender field and enter a sender's name
- Press \cdots (Save)
- Press (Accept) after checking the items

13

To delete an address

After Step 5, highlight the address, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete$ 

#### 

If Mobile Tracker is on, SMS notification is sent to specified address when 705SC is turned on; nothing appears on 705SC.

Even if Mobile Tracker is off, notification is sent if Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times.

## Rejecting Incoming Calls

Automatically reject calls with no Caller ID. Reject nuisance calls by saving phone numbers to Black List.

## **Reject Withheld**

#### Default Setting Off

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  All calls  $\rightarrow$  Reject incoming calls
- Select Reject withheld field
- Select the setting and press
- ⚠ Press : (Save)

## **Reject Unavailable**

#### Default Setting = Off

Reject/accept calls by callers who are unable to send caller ID, like International calls from overseas/transferred calls from landlines

- 2 Select Reject unavailable field
- 3 Select the setting and press
- 4 Press (Save)

#### Black List

- **>** Select Black list field
- 3 Set the phone number

To enter a phone number directly

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Add  $\rightarrow$  Direct input
- 2 Enter phone number

#### To select a phone number from Phonebook

- 1 Options  $\rightarrow$  Add  $\rightarrow$  Phonebook
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- 3 Select phone number

#### To enter a phone number using Call Log

- ① Options  $\rightarrow$  Add  $\rightarrow$  Call log
- Select the log record
- 4 Press and press (Save)

#### Tip

- To delete phone numbers from Black list
  - 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2
  - ② Highlight the phone number to delete, select Options → Delete → Selected or All → Yes

## **Reject Black List**

- 2 Select Reject black list field
- **3** Select the setting and press
- 4 Press (Save)

## Restoring Defaults

## Clear Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging folders, Phonebook (Phone) entries, and Calendar entries each or all at once.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings* 
  - $\rightarrow$  Memory settings  $\rightarrow$  Phone memory
  - → Clear memory
- Check items to reset and press (OK)
- 3 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

## Master Reset

## **Reset Settings**

Clear Saved contents/settings and restore defaults. However, the following contents are not restored.

Setting menu	Content not to be reset
Phone settings	Contents set in Time and Date fields for
	Time & date
Display settings	Contents set in <i>Brightness</i>
Call settings	All calls→Reject incoming calls→
	contents saved in Black list
	<i>Voice call/Video call</i> →contents saved/
	set in <i>Diverts</i>
	<i>Voice call/Video call</i> →contents set in
	Call waiting
	Contents set in Call barring
	Contents set in <i>Voice mail</i>
Phonebook	Contents saved/set in My phonebook
settings	details, Category settings
Connectivity	Preferred networks
Security	USIM lock, PIN lock, Change PIN
	code, Change PIN2 code

- Press (Menu) and select Settings
  - $\rightarrow$  Memory settings  $\rightarrow$  Phone memory
  - → Master reset → Reset settings
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

#### Reset All

Restore 705SC defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/settings. Original files and S! Appli are restored.

- 2 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

## Tools

## 🗾 Alarms

## Wake-up Alarm/Alarms

Register a Wake-up alarm and 4 other alarms. Each alarm can be named and the name given to Alarm appears when Alarm sounds. Once an alarm time is saved, it can only be set/reset by switching *Alarm activation* to *On* or *Off.* In addition to setting one time only alarm, set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Alarms*
- 2 Select an alarm from Wake-up alarm to Alarm4
- **3** Select Alarm activation field
- 4 Select On and press

## **5** Select and set other items as required

Set a name (Wake-up alarm cannot be edited)

- 1 Select Alarm name field
- 2 Enter the name to set

#### Set Alarm time

Highlight Alarm time field and enter the time

#### Set an Alarm sound

- 1 Select Alert tone field
- ② Select the location of sound file, select an alarm sound and press

#### Set Vibrator

- 1 Select Vibration field
- 2 Select the setting and press

#### Set Alarm volume

- (1) Select Alarm volume field
- ② Use to adjust the volume
- ③ Press (Play) to check the volume and press (Save)

#### Set whether to sound repeatedly or once

- (1) Select Repeat field
- (2) Select *Everyday* or *Once alarm* and press



#### Set days of the week for a repeated alarm to sound

- 1) Select Repeat field
- (2) Select *Specify days* and press (Edit)
- (3) Check the days to set and press (OK)

#### Set a snooze procedure

- (1) Select Snooze field
- 2 Select the setting and press

#### If you do not want to activate Alarm yet

- (1) Select Alarm activation field
- (2) Select *Off* and press

## 6 Press (Save)

#### Tip

- When wake-up alarm/alarms are set appears.
- When wake-up alarm and/or multiple alarms have been set for the same activation time

Wake-up alarm takes priority over *Alarm1* to *Alarm4*. Among alarms, the last set one takes priority.

- Alarm volume settings
  - Select \(\rightarrow\) to adjust volume step by step. Alarm volume become louder gradually.
- When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.

#### 

Alarm sounds and a message appears if an alarm sound is set to mute ( $\bigcirc$  P.9-3), you are notified by the vibrator even when Alarm sound is not set to On in Step 5. Alternatively, notify using vibrator with vibration setting On. Press any key to stop Alarm sound and press any key again to clear the message.

#### H When Snooze is on

Alarm sounds for one minute, up to six times at the specified interval, or until Snooze is canceled. If no handset operations take place, and (End) are not pressed while alarm sounds, alarm is automatically reset to sound again at the specified interval. To cancel Snooze, press or (End).

#### **⊞** When a call is being initiated or during a call

During a call or connection (*Connecting* ··· appears), 705SC notifies with a short sound and indicator; uncheck *Alerts on call* (in Phone sounds setting) to notify only by an indicator. When an outgoing call is being Initiated (*Dialing* ··· appears), 705SC notifies with a short sound and indicator as connection established. Press any key twice to clear an indicator; with Snooze *On*, press ··· (End).

#### 

Alarm sound is generated as soon as capturing of recording finishes.

## Auto Power On

#### Default Setting =Off

If you set this setting to On, even when the power is turned off, the power is automatically turned on at the time set for a wake-up alarm or alarm.

- Press (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow Alarms \rightarrow Auto\ power$
- **?** Select *On* or *Off* and press **■** (Save)

#### Note

 Cancel Auto Power On near electronic devices employing high precision or low frequency signals, in places where mobile phone use is prohibited, like airplanes or hospitals. ➡ When the Time for Wake-up alarm/Alarm comes

705SC automatically turned the power on. Deactivating alarm sound, display indicator, snooze function is performed by the same operation as usual (②P.14-4). Stop alarm sound and go off display indicator; 705SC shows Standby display and continues to power on.

## 🗷 Calendar

- Displaying Calendar
- Press (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow Calendar$

## **Viewing Calendar**

View Calendar in Monthly, Weekly or Daily view.



**Monthly View Window** 

- : Highlighted position

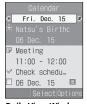
  (Date in light blue): Current
- (Date in light blue) : Curren day

Date in red: Holiday/Sunday



**Weekly View Window** 

- " (In Yellow) : Anniversary registered
- (In Blue) : Schedule registered
- (In Green) : Memo registered
  (In Red) : Task registered



**Daily View Window** 

- ☐ : Schedule

  ☆ : Anniversary
  - ] : Holiday r : Memo
- ☐ ☐ ☐ : Priority

  ∴ : Alarm set
- : Repetition set

#### Tip

 To display the previous or next month on Monthly view window

Press / # , highlight Year/Month field and press

 To display the previous or next week on Weekly view window

Press (# ), highlight Year/Month field and press 

. To display the previous or next day on Daily view window

Press , 💘, or # 🗓

To view a particular month or week

From Monthly view window or Weekly view window, change Display by specifying year, month, and day as follows.

- (1) In the calendar window, select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Go to*
- (2) Select Date, enter the year, month, and day and press

When Today is selected in Step (2), the current date is highlighted on the window of the current month or week.

#### **Calendar Window Format**

- Default Setting Starting day: Sunday
  - Default view mode: Monthly view

Set first day of the week to Sunday or Monday as well as the default Calendar window.

- Press  $| \blacksquare |$  (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow$ Calendar
- **>** Select *Options* → *Settings*
- Select settings

Set the first day of week

- **1**) Select *Starting day*
- **2** Select the setting and press (Save)

Set the default view mode

- (1) Select *Default view mode*
- **2** Select the setting and press (Save)

#### Tip

. When settings are changed

A change in *Starting day* is immediately reflected. Selecting the settings of *Default view mode* can be applied when you deactivate calendar and then reactivate it.

To temporarily change display mode
 In the calendar window, select Options → View mode → Display mode

## Saving New Entries to Calendar

#### **Scheduled Events**

Save a maximum of 100 items.

Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow Calendar$ 

2 Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Add new*  $\rightarrow$  *Schedule* 

## **3** Select items and make settings

#### Set a title

Select Title field and enter a text

#### Set details

Select Details field and enter a text

#### Set a starting date

Highlight Start date field and enter a date

#### Set a starting time

Highlight Start time field and enter a time

#### Set an ending date

Highlight End date field and enter a date

#### Set an ending time

Highlight End time field and enter a time

#### Set an event location

Select Location field and enter a text

#### Set an alarm

- (1) Check Alarm field to select
- ② Highlight Before field, enter an interval before Alarm time, use to highlight Unit field and switch to an appropriate unit
- ③ Select Alert tone field, select a location of sound files and select an alert tone

#### **Set Repeat**

- 1 Check Repeat field to select
- ② Use to highlight Time cycle field and specify the time cycle unit
- (3) Highlight Value field and enter a value
- (4) Highlight Until date field and enter a year, month, and day to stop repetition

#### Set Expiry time for a Calendar Event

Use to highlight Expiry field and switch the expiry limit

4 Press 🗀 (Save)

#### Tip

- To make it easier to enter a Start/End date

  Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before

  Step 2 to show that date in Start date or End date field.
- When an event has expired
   Event is automatically deleted from Calendar. For example, if expiry is After 1 year, and repetition is not set, it is deleted after one year from the event end date. With repetition set, it is deleted one year after the end date of the last repetition. To cancel automatic deletion, set Disable for expiry date.
- When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.

## **Anniversary/Holiday**

Register a maximum of 50 anniversaries and 50 holidays.

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Calendar*
- 2 Select Options  $\rightarrow$  Add new  $\rightarrow$  Anniversary or Holiday
- 3 Select items and make settings

#### Set a text

- 1 Select Text entry field
- (2) Enter text

#### Set a date

Highlight Date field and enter the date

#### Set an alarm (Anniversary only)

- (1) Check Alarm field to select
- ② Highlight Before field, enter an interval before the anniversary Alarm time, use to highlight Unit field and switch to an appropriate unit

- (3) Highlight Alarm time field, and enter a time
- Select Alert tone field, select the location of sound of files and select an alert tone

#### Set to repeat every year

Check Repeat every year field

4 Press (Save)

#### Tip

- To make it easier to enter a date
   Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before
   Step 2 to show that date in Date field.
- When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.

- Press (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow Calendar$
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Add new*  $\rightarrow$  *Memo*
- 3 Select the memo text box and enter text

To set the date

Select Date and enter the date

4 Press (Save)

Tip

• To make it easier to enter a date (�P.14-9)

#### **Tasks**

Register a maximum of 100 time-limited items and manage them in a list.

- Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow Calendar$
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Add new*  $\rightarrow$  *Task*
- 3 Select items and make settings

Set a title

- (1) Select Title field
- (2) Enter title

#### Set a description of the task

- (1) Select Task field
- (2) Enter text

#### To set the starting date

Highlight Start date field and enter the date

#### To set the due date

Highlight Due date field and enter the date

#### Set an alarm

- 1) Check Alarm field
- ② Highlight Before field, enter a value for how long before the task starts the alarm should sound, use to highlight field of units and select an appropriate unit
- (3) Highlight Alarm time field and enter the time
- (4) Select Alert tone field, select the location of sound files and select an alert tone

#### Set a priority level

Use **t** o highlight Priority field and select a value

4 Press (Save)

#### Tip

To make it easier to enter a Starting date or Due date

Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Starting date and Due date field.

 When setting Memory Card file as Alarm sound Copy or move file to 705SC before setting.

#### □ Volume of Alarm sound

The volume follows the setting of *Tone volume* for Voice calls; the setting of *Voice call* in *Vibration* for Vibrator.

#### **➡** When the time set for Alarm comes

Alarm sounds and a message appears. To stop Alarm, press any key. Press to cancel the message display. With no action to stop Alarm, a message appears indicating Missed alarm event. Press (View) to view the message.

When a call is being initiated or during a call

During a call or connection (*Connecting* ··· appears), 705SC notifies with a short sound and indicator; uncheck *Alerts on call* (in Phone sounds setting) to notify only by an indicator. When an outgoing call is being Initiated (*Dialing* ··· appears), 705SC notifies only by an indicator. Press to clear an indicator.

## Viewing Saved Calendar Entries

Press ■ (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Calendar* 

**2** Open a window listing items

To check items of one day

Select a date on Monthly view window or Weekly view window, or use to change the date on Daily view window

To check registered contents by type  $Options \rightarrow Event \ list$  and select a type

To check the message of a missed alarm Options → Missed alarm event

**3** Select and view details

#### Tip

• To check calendar item status
Select *Options* in Calendar or registered contents list and *Memory status*; check the number of savings by type.

## Editing Calendar Entries

## **Editing and Saving as New Entries**

In addition to edit and update the entries, edit the entries and save them as new entries.

Press ■ (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Calendar* 

**?** Open a window listing entries

To open a window listing entries for a single day

Select a date on Monthly view window or Weekly view window, or use to change the date on Daily view window

To view events by type

 $Options \rightarrow Event \ list \ and \ select \ a \ type$ 

**3** Select an item to edit

4 Press (Edit)

- **5** Change the information as required
- 6 Press (Save) and select *New* or *Update*

## Marking a Task as Completed

- Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow Calendar$
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Event list*  $\rightarrow$  *Task*
- 3 Highlight a completed task, select Options → Completed

To remove the completion mark

*Options* → *To do* 

#### Tip

To sort tasks

In the Task window, select *Options* → *Sort by* and select a sorting type. Classify tasks into completed/uncompleted ones or sort them by due date or priority.

## Deleting Calendar Entries

- In Calendar window or saved contents list, select *Options* → *Delete*
- **2** Delete the entry

To delete only the highlighted entry

Select Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

To delete all entries of current month or week Select *This month* or *This week*  $\rightarrow$  *Yes* 

To delete only entries from a specific period of time

- 1 Select *Periods*
- (2) Enter the start and end dates
- ③ Press (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all entries or all before the highlighted date

- ① Select All or All past data
- ②Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

#### Tip

- To collectively delete multiple registered items
  Select registered unnecessary items from a list by type and delete them collectively.
  - 1 Press  $\blacksquare$  and select  $Tools \rightarrow Calendar$
  - **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Event list and select the type
  - $\bigcirc$  Options → Delete → Multiple
  - (4) Check the items to delete, press (Delete) and select *Yes*

## Calendar Options

Perform the following operations from *Options* on a window listing Calendar entries:

Item	Description
Add new	Save a new Calendar entry (�P.14-7).
Send schedule/ Send task	Send Calendar entry via S! Mail (�P.17-6) or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> (�P.12-5).
View mode	Select a display mode (�P.14-7).
Go to	Display a particular month or week by changing Monthly/Weekly view window (�P.14-6).
Event list	View events listed by type (◆P.14-12).

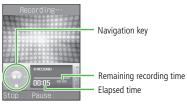
Item	Description
Delete	Delete a Calendar entry (♠P.14-13).
Completed/To do	Set or cancel the task completion mark (�P.14-12).
Sort by	Sort tasks (�P.14-13).
Save to Data Folder	Create and save vFiles to Data Folder Other documents or Memory card.
Settings	Select Calendar Display settings (�P.14-6).
Missed alarm event	View the message of a missed alarm (♠P.14-12).
Print via Bluetooth	Print highlighted schedule event or task via Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> printer.
Memory status	Check memory usage for Calendar functions (�P.14-12).

## Voice Recorder

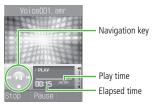
Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, during a call, via Data Folder *Options* or a Message creation window.

#### Voice Recorder Window

Control Voice Recorder with Softkeys and navigation key.



**Recording Window** 



Playback Window

## Recording Voice

Recorded voice is saved to *Sounds & Ringtones* Data Folder.

Press ■ (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder* 

To change the fixed recording time (♦P.14-17)

2 Press (Record)

**3** Press (Stop) or continue recording until the set time runs out

4 As required, press 🔳 (Play) to replay

#### To pause

Press (Pause)

#### To resume

Options → Record

To record voice from *Options* (�P.14-16)

## Playing Voice

Replay a voice file saved in Data Folder.

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder*
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *My sounds*
- 3 Highlight the file and press (Play)

#### **☐** Voice Recorder Options

Operate listed below from *Options* before and after recording. *Options* and selectable items vary by the conditions. For more information about available options after selecting *My sounds*, see "Data Folder Options" (�P.11-13).

Item	Description
Record	Start recording.
My sounds	Call up list of sound files saved in the My sounds folder.
Send	Send a file via S! Mail (◆P.17-6) or Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> (◆P.12-5).
Set as	Set voice for ringtone, etc.

Item	Description
Delete	Delete a recorded voice file.
Rename	Change file name.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm recorded sound file size, etc.
Record settings	Select the file name assigned automatically or the fixed recording time (�P.14-16).

## Changing Voice Recorder Settings

#### **Default Name**

#### Default Setting = Voice

The voice recorded with Voice recorder is saved under a name such as "Voice 001." "Voice" can be changed to another word.

- 2 Select Options → Record settings → Default name
- 3 Enter a name

#### Tip

If the default name is changed
 The naming rule is applied from the next recording.

#### **Recording Time**

Default Setting = 5 minutes

- 2 Select Options → Record settings → Recording time
- 3 Select a duration and press (Save)

## **Set Default Memory**

With Memory Card inserted, set save location to 705SC (Phone) or Memory Card for recorded sound files.

Default Setting Phone

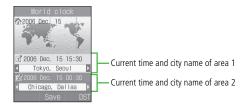
- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder*
- 2 Select Options → Record settings → Set default memory
- **3** Select the setting and press (Save)

## World Clock

World clock allows you to check the current time all over the world.

## Viewing World Clock

Press ■ (Menu) and select *Tools* → World clock



## Selecting Areas

Default Setting ■ *Tokyo*, *Seoul* for both areas

When you save a second time zone, easily check the time at that area looking at World clock.

Press ■ (Menu) and select *Tools* → World clock

2 Use to highlight area 1 and use to change city name

#### To set summer time

- 1 Press (DST)
- ② Check the area to set summer time and press (Done)
- 3 Press (Save)

## Using Calculator

Arithmetic operations to a maximum of 13 digits can be performed.

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Calculator*
- **?** Calculate

To enter numbers

Press keys

To enter +, -,  $\times$ , or  $\div$  Press  $\bigcirc$ ,  $\bigcirc$ ,  $\bigcirc$ ,  $\bigcirc$ , or  $\bigcirc$ 

To display the calculation result

Press 🔳

To enter ., (, or )

Press (.( )) to toggle symbols

To move cursor left or right

Press ★ Or # 29

To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression

Place cursor after a symbol to erase and press

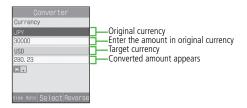
To erase both the mathematical expression and the calculation result

Press Clear for 1+ seconds

# Converting Currencies or Units

Convert the currencies for various countries. Alternatively, convert the units of length, weight, etc.

## Converting Currencies



**2** Select Original currency field and currency

To replace the original currency with the target currency

Press (Reverse)

3 Select Original currency amount field and enter the amount

To enter a decimal point

Press \*\*\*

- 4 Select Target currency field and currency
- 5 View result in the target currency
  To check the exchange rate
  - ① Highlight either of Currency fields and press
    (View Rate)
  - 2 Press to return to the Original window

#### To change the exchange rate

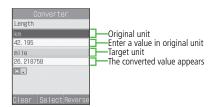
- ① Highlight either of Currency fields and press (View Rate)
- ② Select the base currency to change the rate, highlight the currency, select Options → Edit
- 3 Enter the rate and press (Save)

#### To add a currency unit

- 1 Press (View Rate)
- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Add Rate
- 3 Enter the currency unit/rate and press (Save)

## Converting Units

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Converter*
- 2 Select Length, Weight, Volume, Area, or Temperature



3 Select Original unit field and select the unit

To replace the original unit with the target unit

Press (Reverse)

4 Highlight Original unit value field and enter the value

To enter a decimal point

Press \*\*\*

To enter/delete "-" when converting temperature

Press #

5 Select target Unit field and select the unit

6 View result in Converted value field

To clear the values

Press (Clear)

## Stopwatch

705SC can be used as a stopwatch for measuring a maximum of ten lap times plus the total time.

- Press (Menu) and select *Tools* → *Stopwatch*
- 2 Press (Start)
- 3 Press (Lap) to measure a lap time or □ (Stop) to stop time measurement

## Dictionary

Look up English/Japanese dictionaries.

- Press  $\square$  (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow$ **Dictionary**
- Select a dictionary

To use English dictionary

Select *English dictionary* 

To use Japanese dictionary

Select *Japanese dictionary* 

- Enter a word to search
- Select a target word

## Interpreter (Japanese Only)

Enter Japanese text or voice for common phrases used in airports and other places in English, Korean or Chinese.

- Press  $\square$  (Menu) and select  $Tools \rightarrow$ Interpreter
- Select the language
- Select an item

By voice

Speak the item in menu to 705SC after the beep

By text

Use to highlight the item and press



Select the phrase

By voice

Speak the phrase for inquiry to 705SC after the beep

To set by keys

Press  $\bigcirc$  ( $\times = 1$ ) to select the item

## 5 Highlight the phrase and press

To listen the phrase

Press (音を聴)

To listen the phrase again

Press (再聴)

#### Tip

• To play voice prompts
After Step 3, press (サウンドオン)

• When もう一回言って下さい appears 705SC could not recognize your voice. Speak clearly again or say another phrases.

# Advanced Functions

## Calling Functions

#### **Auto Redial**

Default Setting Off

Set to automatically disconnect a Voice/Video Call initiated to a party that is busy and redial the same party soon. Automatic redialing repeats up to 10 times until is pressed or 705SC is closed.

- Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$ Call settings  $\rightarrow$  All calls  $\rightarrow$  Auto redial
- Select a value and press (Save)

#### Tip

- When Retry with is set for Video Call Automatic redialing settings take priority.
- When receiver has activated Voice Mail or Call **Forwarding**

The call is forwarded and automatic redialing is canceled.

## **International Dial**

#### **International Prefix**

Default Setting = 0046010

Set the international code frequently used when initiating an international phone call.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice call  $\rightarrow$ *International dial*→ *Int'l prefix*
- **Enter an international code**

## **Editing Country Codes**

Default Setting

■ 1: Japan 2: KOR 3: GBR 4: ITA 5: CHE 6: FSP 7: DFU 8: PRT 9: NID 10: FRA 11: MCO 12: USA 13: SWF 14: AUS 15: CHN 16: HKG 17: TWN 18 to 20: Unused

Add a country code or delete an unnecessary one.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice call  $\rightarrow$ International dial  $\rightarrow$  Country codes
- Perform operations to add, change, or delete

#### To add or change

- (1) Highlight the item to add or change and press (Change)
- (2) Select Country name field and enter the country name
- (3) Highlight Country code, enter code and press (Save)

#### To delete

Highlight item to delete, press (Delete) and select Yes

## **Earphone call**

- Default Setting Earphone call activate: Off
  - Call number: No list

When *Earphone call* is On, press switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number.

- **2** Select *Earphone call activate*
- 3 Select the setting
- 4 Highlight *Call number* and perform operations to save phone number

#### To enter a phone number directly

- ① Press (Select) and select *Direct input*
- 2 Enter phone number

#### To select a phone number from Phonebook

- 1) Press (Select) and select *Phonebook*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- (Select) This is a substitution of the second of the secon

#### To enter a phone number using Call Log

- 1) Press (Select) and select *Call log*
- 2 Select the log record
- **5** Press (Save)

#### Tip

- To delete a phone number
  - 1 Perform Step 1
  - 2 Press (Select) and select *Direct input*
  - 3 Press clear for 1+ seconds press
- To change a phone number
  - (1) Perform Step 1
  - 2 Perform Step 4
  - (Save)

## Handling Incoming Calls

Anykey Answer

Default Setting = Off

Answer Voice Calls using keys other than (Accept) or .

- Press (Menu) and select Settings  $\rightarrow$  Phone settings  $\rightarrow$  Anykey answer
- **2** Select *On* or *Off* and press (Save)

Tip

• Answering a Voice Call when On is set (�P.2-3)

Acoustic Shock

Default Setting On

Reduces ringer volume to Level 1 for the first two seconds.

- 2 Select the setting and press (Save)

## Active Slide

Default Setting Slide up: On Slide down: Off

Open 705SC to answer an incoming call. Alternatively, close 705SC to disconnect a call during a call.

- 2 Select Slide up or Slide down
- **3** Select On or Off and press  $\blacksquare$  (Save)

#### Tip

• The contents of Slide up are:

On: Opening 705SC will answer an incoming call. Off: Opening 705SC will not answer an incoming call.

#### • The contents of Slide down are:

On: During a call, closing 705SC will end a call.

Off: During a call, closing 705SC will not end a call.

Hold: During a Voice Call, closing 705SC will place a call on hold (when Call Waiting or Conference Call is in use); during a Video Call, placing a call on hold by closing 705SC is not available.

## Side Key Silence/Reject

Default Setting Silence

Use  $\boxed{0}$  or  $\boxed{0}$  to mute ringer or reject an incoming call. Select from Reject (disconnect the call) or Silence (silence the incoming tone).

- 2 Select a value and press (Save)

## Simple Search

Default Setting = Off

When *Simple search* is *On*, enter numbers in Standby to search Phonebook entries starting with Reading name corresponding each number. Then search result (entry names and phone numbers) list appears.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*→ *Phone settings* → *Simple search*
- **>** Select the setting and press (Save)

Tip

• To initiate calls using *Simple search* (�P.5-11)

## 🎜 Keypad Lock

In Standby, with 705SC open, perform operations to set.

Press (Menu) for 1+ seconds

Tip

· With Keypad Lock active

In Standby, he appears; close 705SC and perform any key operation, then popup message appears indicating procedure to temporally cancel Keypad Lock.

When opening 705SC
 Key operations enabled (Keypad Lock remains potentially active; close 705SC, then Keypad Lock is activated again).

To cancel

With 705SC open, press (Menu) for 1+ seconds to cancel; with 705SC closed, press (Menu) for 1+ seconds to perform key operations temporally.

## Idle Shortcuts

Up to nine frequently used functions can be saved; create your own Shortcut Menu. In Standby, press (a) to access functions saved to shortcuts.

- Press
- 2 Highlight unsaved function entry box and press (Assign)
- **3** Select the function
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to save the function

#### Tip

#### To change functions

- ① In Step 2, Highlight the function, select *Options* → *Assign*
- Select Yes and select the function

#### To sort functions

- ① In Step 2, Highlight the function, select *Options* → *Change Order*
- ② Use to highlight the target function box and press (Select)

#### · To delete functions

In Step 2, Highlight the function, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Yes$ 

#### · To restore defaults

In Step 2, Highlight the function, select  $Options \rightarrow Reset \rightarrow Yes$ 

## Set Default Memory

Default Setting = On phone

With Memory Card inserted, select save location to 705SC (Phone) or Memory Card. This location change is available for the data when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files from information window, receiving data via Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>, or other occasions.

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Memory settings  $\rightarrow$  Set default memory
- **>** Select the setting and press **■** (Save)

#### Tip

With no Memory Card inserted

On memory card or Always ask is set; save location is automatically set to 705SC (Phone).

## Memory Status

Check the following information:

- Available shared memory
- Status of SMS and S! Mail mailboxes
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar items registered
- Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card) Alternatively, delete saved entries and/or files.
- Press (Menu) and select *Settings* → Memory settings → Memory status
- Select an item to check

#### Tip

#### To delete contents

When the contents in Data Folder, Calendar or Phonebook are to be deleted

- 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2
- ② Highlight an item, press (Select), select *Yes* and view an entry
- ③ Check the fields to delete, press (Delete) and select Yes

#### • To delete all contents

After Step ③ in "To delete the contents," enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes* 

#### To check/uncheck all contents at once

After Step ③ in "To delete the contents," select *Options*→ *Mark all* or *Unmark all* 

#### When the checked contents contain the contents that functions or locks are set in

After Step 3 in "To delete the contents" or the "To delete all contents" operations, the confirmation window appears. If you select *Yes*, the deletion is performed. If you select *No*, only files without functions or locks set are deleted.

# Optional Services

## Optional Services

The following optional services are available with 705SC:

Service	Description	
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls to 705SC, automatically divert calls to a specified number.	
Voice Mail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Center; access caller messages via 705SC from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere.	
Call Waiting*	A tone sounds for incoming calls when the line is engaged. Put the line on hold to answer or alternate between lines.	
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on all simultaneously. Add new parties to an existing conference; talk on up to five lines simultaneously.	
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.	

Service	Description	
Caller	Show or hide your own number when placing	
Identification	calls.	

<sup>\*</sup> This service requires a separate subscription.

#### Note

 When Out appears, access services from a touchtone landline. For details, contact Customer Service (♠P.25-25).

## Call Forwarding

Set forwarding condition and number, by call type (Voice Call or Video Call), beforehand, to divert incoming calls to a specified number.

Forwarding Condition	Description	
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or 705SC is out-of-range.	
Always	705SC does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically and Missed Call does not appear.	

#### Note

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail.
- Call Forwarding is not available when All outgoing calls or All incoming calls in Call Barring is active (Call Barring takes priority over Call Forwarding).

## Activating Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand.

- **2** Select *No reply* or *Always*; view the current settings

When the settings are acceptable

After viewing, press to return to the previous window

## **A** Highlight Forwarding address field and enter a number

#### To select a phone number from Phonebook

- 1) Highlight forwarding Address field and select  $Options \rightarrow Phonebook$
- (2) Select Phonebook, highlight a phone number and press (Select)
- **4** For *No reply*, highlight Waiting time field and set a time
- **5** Press **■** (ON)

#### Tip

• When Call Forwarding (No reply) is active While 705SC rings/vibrates, answer a call or press . (Busy) to forward it.

## **Cancel All**

Cancel all Diverts services at once.

Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice call or Video  $call \rightarrow Diverts \rightarrow Cancel all$ 

#### Tip

- To stop Call Transfer service for each forwarding condition
  - (1) Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Call Settings* → Voice call or Video call → Diverts
  - (2) Select No reply or Always
  - (3) Press (OFF)

## **Check Status**

Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice call or Video  $call \rightarrow Diverts \rightarrow Check status$ 

## Voice Mail

Forward an incoming Voice Call to Voice Mail Center or a specified number based on preset forwarding conditions (�P.16-3).

#### Note

- Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.
- · Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding.
- Voice Mail is not available when All outgoing calls or All incoming calls in Call Barring is active (Call Barring takes priority over Voice Mail).

## Activating Voice Mail

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*→ *Call settings* → *Voice mail*
- **2** Select *No reply* or *Always*
- **3** For *No reply*, highlight Waiting time field and set a time
- 4 Press (ON)

#### Tip

• When Voice Mail (*No reply*) is active
While 705SC rings/vibrates, answer a call or press
(Busy) to forward it.

## **Canceling Voice Mail**

Cancel all Voice mail services at once.

Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice mail  $\rightarrow$ Cancel all

Tip

- To cancel Voice Mail by forwarding condition
  - (1) Press  $\blacksquare$  (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Call settings* → Voice mail
  - (2) Select *No reply* or *Always*
  - (3) Press (OFF)

## **Checking Settings**

Press (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice mail  $\rightarrow$ Check status

## Listening to Messages

When a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center, in standby, a message appears. Also, appears at the top of Display.



## While Message Appears

Connect to Voice Mail Center as described below and follow voice prompts.

Press (Dial)

To check message details

Press | while message appears

#### Tip

- To access caller message from overseas
  - 1) Press of 1+ seconds and enter +
  - **2** Enter 819066514170 and press
- To delete a message without listening to it Press : (End).
- To clear 1115 Voice Mail indicator disappears when messages are accessed via 7055C.

## While No Message Appears

Enter 1416 and press 🕤

## **Incoming Call Notification**

SMS is delivered for calls unanswered because 705SC is outside service area or off, or if a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center while the line is engaged.

## **Incoming Call Notification**

Tenter 1414 and press (Free of charge)

When setting from a general subscriber phone in Japan (Free of charge)

Dial 090-665-1414 and press 🕤

When setting in overseas (Charged)

Press of 1+ seconds, enter +, enter 81-90-665-14191 and press

**2** Perform operations following the audio prompts

## Call Waiting\*

\* A separate subscription is required to use this service. This service is only available for Voice Calls.

## **Activating or Canceling**

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Voice call  $\rightarrow$  Call waiting
- Activate or cancel the service

To activate

Press (ON)

To cancel

Press (OFF)

## Receiving a Second Call

When there is an incoming call during a call, you are notified with a specific interrupt sound and display. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.

- When you hear the interrupt sound, press (Accept)
- **Select** *Hold active call*

To end the current call and answer the second call

Select *End active call* 

- 📿 Press 证 (Swap) to toggle the calls
- To end the current call, press

To end the call on hold

 $Options \rightarrow End \rightarrow Held\ call$ 

#### To end both calls at once

*Options*  $\rightarrow$  *End*  $\rightarrow$  *All calls*, or close 705SC

#### Tip

 When the other party ends the call and you have another call waiting

Press (Retrieve) to talk to the waiting party.

 When the Call Transfer service or Voice Mail service is active

When the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voice Mail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is not available.

## Conference Call\*

\* A separate subscription is required to use this service.

Talk with a maximum of six parties simultaneously.



When the called party is connected, the party that has been connected is placed on hold.

During a call, select *Options* → *New* call and enter number

#### To use Phonebook

- 1) Press (Search) and select Phonebook
- ② Highlight the phone number and press (Select)

## To use a log

Press , open logs and highlight the entry

2 Press (Call) and talk with the connected party

## **Engaged Conference Call Operations**

- Call another party during a call (**P.16-9**)
- **Press** (Swap) to switch connected calls

#### Tip

To end the call on hold

During a call, select  $Options \rightarrow End \rightarrow Held \ call$ 

To end all calls

During a call, select  $Options \rightarrow End \rightarrow All \ calls$ , or close 705SC

 When the current caller ends the call while using Conference Call service

A party on hold remains on-hold state. Switch to the on-hold party to talk.

## Join

- During a call, initiate a call to another party (**○**P.16-9)
- $\triangleright$  Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Join*

#### Tip

To call with only one person

During a call, select  $Options \rightarrow Split$  and select a caller to talk to

To end the call for a specific caller

During a call, select  $Options \rightarrow End \rightarrow Select$ participant, check callers to end and press (End)

- To end the all calls During a call, press
- When one party ends the call during Conference Call Continue talking with remaining parties.

## Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice/Video Calls or SMS by the conditions listed below.

Item		Description
Restrict outgoing calls	All outgoing calls	Deactivates initiating calls and SMS sending, except emergency calls.
	Outgoing Intl calls	Deactivates initiating international calls and SMS sending within your current location.
	Intl except home	Deactivates initiating international calls and SMS sending within your current location or except Japan.
Restrict incoming calls	All incoming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving.
	Incoming when roaming	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving while outside of Japan.

Setting restrictions requires Network Password (The 4-digit number dedicated to Outgoing/incoming service specified at the subscription).

#### Note

- If incorrect Network Password is entered three consecutive times, Call Barring service is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For more information, contact Customer Service (◆P.25-25).
- If Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is active, *All outgoing calls* or *All incoming calls* cannot be set.

#### Tip

 If a call is attempted while restrictions are on A message appears indicating that outgoing call restriction is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

## **Restrict Outgoing/Incoming** Calls

Restrict outgoing calls and/or Restrict incoming calls for each type of call (Voice/Video Calls, SMS)/transmission.

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Call barring
- **>** Select *Voice call, Video call,* or *SMS* and select a restriction type
- **Enter Network Password**

## Set or cancel call barring

#### To set

Press (ON)

#### To cancel

Press (OFF)

#### Tip

• To check settings

Perform Steps 1 and 2. After checking the settings, press clear to return to the previous window.

## **Cancel All**

Canceling outgoing and incoming call is available for each of call types (Voice and Video Calls, SMS)/transmission.

- Press (Menu) and select Settings  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Call barring
- Select *Voice call, Video call,* or *SMS* → Cancel all

☐ Enter Network Password and press



## **Changing Network Password**

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  Call barring  $\rightarrow$ Change password
- Enter current Network Password in *old* field and new Network Password (4 digits) in *New* and *Confirm* fields, then press (Confirm)

## Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from 705SC.

## **Show My Number**

Default Setting By network

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  Call settings  $\rightarrow$  All calls  $\rightarrow$  Show my number
- **>** Select setting and press **■** (Save)

#### Tip

• When set to By network Automatically set to Show/Hide your number by current network status.

## **Adding 186 or 184**

Use 186 (Show ID) or 184 (Hide ID) prefixes to show or hide your number when calling from 705SC, regardless of the *Show my number* setting.

## **Enter Show ID or Hide ID Prefix**

To show Caller ID

Press 1 8 Btuv 6 mile

To hide Caller ID

Press ( Btuv 4 ghi

**2** Enter phone number

3 Press 🕤

To initiate a Video Call

*Options* → *Video call* 

**Receiving & Sending Messages** 

## Getting Started

#### S! Mail

Use this service to send/receive long text messages, images, videos, other files, and sounds between S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs via e-mail.

A separate subscription is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail.

#### **SMS**

Use this service to send/receive short text messages between SMS-compatible SoftBank handsets using phone numbers.

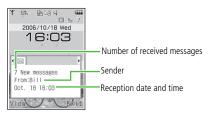
#### Tip

#### · Retry function

If the other party's handset cannot receive a message because the power turned off or out-of-range, 705SC keeps the message saved on Mail Server; then send to the other party after signal reception recovers stable.

# Checking for New Messages

When a message is received in Standby mode, reception notification appears. The number of received messages, senders and reception dates/times appear.



**Reception Notification Window** 

## Press 证 (View)



Received Message List

#### When multiple messages appear

Use to select the tab and press (View)

## **2** Select a new received message



**SMS Window** 



S! Mail Text

#### Tip

- When a message is received (out of Standby mode)

   is or is appears on the top of Display (♣P.1-9).
- Received message count

When there are unread messages, the total number of new and unread messages appears.

#### Sender information

A phone number or mail address appears. When the sender has been saved in Phonebook, you will see the name saved in Phonebook. When an incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or an incoming image has been set for the group, the image appears at the same time. While Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *On* for message receiver/sender information; sender's name/image does not appear.

#### **➡** SMS Operations

In SMS window, press Side Keys 10 to enlarge/reduce text font size. Alternatively, press or 1+ seconds to auto scroll. To stop auto scroll, press any key. Press or to adjust the scroll speed.

#### **⊕** 3D Pictogram (�P.20-5)

By default, when you check an incoming/unread message (Except S! Mail that is set for Slide Show or with an attachment), the message text appears in 3D Pictogram. After 3D Pictogram display ends or (Stop) is pressed, Message window appears. Perform various operations after Message window appears.

## Retrieving Complete Messages

When *Home network* (♠P.20-3) or *Roaming* (♠P.20-3) is set to *Manual*, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to 705SC as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

Press □ (□) and select *Received*msgs

## **2** Select a message with the rest of it



**Notification Details** 

- 3 Press (Retrieve)
- 4 Select complete message



Message Window

#### Tip

- Received Message list window indicators
  - 🔈: Unread reception notification (Priority: High)
  - : Unread reception notification (Priority: Standard)
  - : Unread reception notification (Priority: Low)
  - 🔊: Read reception notification (Priority: High)
  - Read reception notification (Priority: Standard)
  - Read reception notification (Priority: Low)
- To retrieve complete messages from Message list window (P.19-2)
- ← Message window for S! Mail with an attachment

The first page shows the file name for the attachment and the second and subsequent pages show the message. Use  $\Box$  to read the message or select  $Options \rightarrow Play$  to start Slide Show.

Select  $Options \rightarrow Play$  to play the slide. During playing, press  $\blacksquare$  (Pause)/ $\boxdot$  (Stop) to pause/stop it. Use  $\blacksquare$  to manually select pages.

#### Message window for S! Mail with an inserted file (♦P.17-16, 17-18)

If an image is inserted, the image appears with the message. If sound is inserted, select  $Options \rightarrow Play$  to play sound. If Slide Show is set, sound is played when the page with an inserted sound appears.

If video is inserted, select  $Options \rightarrow Play$  and press (Video) to play video.

If Slide Show is set, *Video* appears at the lower right and pressing (Video) plays sound when the page with an inserted video appears.

#### Message window with a file requiring purchasing/obtaining Content Key

appears on a page with an inserted file that you cannot view/play.

Select *Options* → *Download content key* to view/play the file.

## Using Received Messages

Send a message directly to the sender.

Press (Reply) on the Message window

## Create a message and press (Send)

#### Tip

Subject display of S! Mail for replies
 The subject of a replied S! Mail is prefixed with "RE:" automatically.

## Creating Messages

Two types of messages are available on 705SC: S! Mail and SMS. The number of characters that can be sent and entry items are different between these types (Shown below).

	S! Mail		SMS
Number of characters that can be sent		Approximately 10,000 single-byte/ double-byte characters Approximately 10,000 characters in one slide (Up to 300KB <sup>3</sup> )	Maximum of 70 single- byte/double- byte, Katakana characters Maximum of 160 single-byte alphanumerics (Up to 140 bytes)
Entry items	Address	Yes	Yes
	Subject	Yes	No
	Attachment	Yes	No
	Message	Yes	Yes

Yes: Available

No: Not available

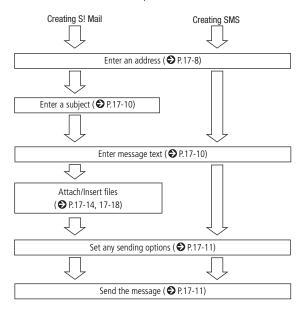
- 1 The number of characters that can be sent varies by the attachment size, etc.
- 2 Set a maximum of 20 slides in one message.
- 3 Total size of all kinds of messages (Including address, subject, text, and attachments).

#### 🖶 Using Mail Art

In S! Mail window, view text/images consecutively like slides or with background color (�P.17-12, 17-14, 17-18).

## Procedures

Create messages in the flow shown below. Enter items other than *Destination* required.



#### Tip

To set sending options beforehand (♠P.20-2, 20-5)

#### □ Automatic Change of Message Type

When message creation is started, the message type is set to SMS; it automatically changes to S! Mail when one of the following occurs:

- Entering mail address as a destination
- Entering a subject
- Entering characters exceeding the number of characters that can be sent by SMS
- Inserting files on Slide Show page
- Attaching or inserting a file
- Changing the address type to Cc or Bcc

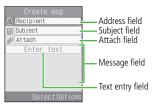
When the message is modified to allow it to be sent as SMS, for example, by deleting an attached or inserted file or a subject, the message type automatically changes to SMS. Depending on message creation conditions, it may not automatically change type. If the mail type is not changed automatically, change it manually (�P.17-11).

#### 9

#### **Address**

Enter a phone number or mail address for S! Mail or a phone number for SMS as a message address. Up to twenty addresses can be entered.

Press <sup>....</sup> (□) and select *Create msg* 



**Message Creation Window** 

## Enter an address

#### To select an address from Phonebook

- 1 Select Address field and select From Phonebook
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- ③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press (Select)

#### To enter an address directly

- 1 Select Address field and select *Enter Recipient*
- **2** Enter phone number or mail address

## To select an address from sent records Select Address field and select the record

# To select an address from a Phonebook Category

- 1) Select Address field and select *From Category*
- Select a Category, with/without Address selection window, highlight an address to enter and press
   (Select)

## **?** To enter another address

#### To enter an address directly

- (1) Select Address field
- **2** Select Entry field and select *Enter Recipient*
- ③Enter phone number or mail address and press (Done)

#### To select an address from Phonebook

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Add recipients  $\rightarrow$  Phonebook
- (2) Search and select Phonebook
- ③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press (Select)

# To select an address from a Phonebook Category

- (1) Options  $\rightarrow$  Add recipients  $\rightarrow$  Category
- ② Select a Category; with/without Address selection window, highlight an Address to enter and press (Select)

#### Tip

- To create a message using a template (◆P.17-14)
- To confirm the entered address
   In Step 3, select Options → Recipient list
- To add an address after confirming entered address
  - ① In Step 3, select *Options* → *View recipient list*
  - ② Select Entry field and perform operation in the same way as Step 2
  - (3) Press (Done)
- To send a message after confirming entered address
  - 1 In Step 3, select *Options* → *View recipient list*
  - ② Options → Send
- To change the address type to To, Cc, or Bcc
  - (1) In Step 3, select *Options* → *View recipient list*
  - ② *Options*, highlight an address → *Change recipients* → *To, Cc,* or *Bcc*
- To delete an address
  - 1 In Step 3, select *Options* → *view recipient list*
  - ② *Options*, highlight an address → *Remove*

- To copy, cut, or paste characters (�P.4-12)
- Viewing Address field

When multiple addresses have been saved, and the number of addresses appear in Address field on Message creation window.

#### Note

- If shared memory (◆P.25-15) is less than 464KB, you cannot create a message. To create a message, delete messages.
- If shared memory (P.25-15) becomes low while in a message creation, you may not be able to save the message in Drafts.
- A message created on 705SC may not appear the same way on the other party's phone.
- Message sent with Subject/Text in Hangul, may appear as spaces or be deleted on the other party's phone.

## Subject

- In Message creation window, select Subject field
- 2 Enter a subject

#### Tip

- To copy, cut, or paste characters (�P.4-12)
- To set/release the prediction entry function (♠P.4-13)

## Message

In Message creation window, select Message field

When Slide Show is set (♠P.17-12)
Select Text entry field

**2** Enter the message

#### Tip

- To copy, cut, or paste characters (♦P.4-12)
- To use an SMS template or Phonebook entry (P.4-10)
- To change the font size of characters being entered In Step 2, select *Options* → *Font Size* → *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*
- To set/release the prediction entry function (P.4-13)
- To set Slide Show (◆P.17-12)
- To insert image files, etc. in a Message field (P.17-15, 17-18)
- To view the text in 3D Pictogram
  In Message creation window, highlight Message field, select
  Options → 3D Pict. Disp.

## Sending a Message

In Message creation window, press (Send)

#### Tip

- . To set sending settings for a message being created
  - ① In Message creation window, select *Options* → Sending options
  - (2) Select an item and make settings ( P.20-2, 20-5)
  - (3) Press (Apply) or (Save)
- . To change the message type
  - ① In Message creation window, highlight all fields except Address field
  - ② Options → Change to S! Mail or Change to SMS → Yes

## Slide Show

Open S! Mail window in Slide Show. Text messages, images, movies, and sounds can be inserted on each page of Slide Show. Set a maximum of 20 slide pages in one message.

In Message creation window, select
Options → Insert → Text



Message Creation Window

- 2 Select added Text entry field and enter a message
- 3 To add a Text entry field for Slide Show, perform Steps 1 and 2

#### Tip

- To insert Image, Sound, or Video
   Perform operations in "Inserting a File" (♠P.17-16).
   Alternatively, other files can be inserted in the same page.
   But image/video or sound/video cannot be displayed in the same page.
- To delete a Text entry field
  - 1 In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field
  - **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Remove  $\rightarrow$  Yes
- To preview Slide Show before sending
  - ① In Message creation window, highlight a field other than Address field
  - **2** Options → Preview
  - (3) Options → Play

# Changing the Style of Message Field

Set the font color, font style, interval time for displaying Slide Show, background color, etc.

In Message creation window, highlight Message field

## Set options as required

#### To set background color

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Edit style
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use to display *All pages*
- (3) Highlight *Background colour* and use to highlight a color

#### Set the page display

- 1) Highlight a Character entry field to set
- 2 Options  $\rightarrow$  Edit style
- (3) Highlight *Slide interval* and enter a time

#### Set the font color

- (1) Options  $\rightarrow$  Edit style
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use to display *All pages*
- (3) Highlight *Font colour* and use to highlight a color

#### Set a font color for a single slide page

1 Highlight a Character entry field to set

- 2 *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit style*
- ③ Highlight *Font colour* and use to highlight a color

#### Set font size for all pages

- **①** *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit style*
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use to display *All pages*
- (3) Highlight *Font Size* and use to display a size

#### To set font size for a single slide page

- 1) Highlight a Character entry field to set
- ② *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit style*
- (3) Highlight *Font Size* and use to display a size

# To change the display order for text and images (Videos)

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Edit style
- ② Highlight *Select page* and use display *All pages*
- (3) Highlight *Order item* and use to display *Text-Top* or *Image (Video)*

## 3 Press (Save)

Tip

- To preview the style before sending
  - ① In Message creation window, highlight a field other than Address field
  - **2** Options → Preview
  - $\bigcirc$  Options → Play

#### Vote

• Edit style or Preview does not appear in SMS Options.

## **Templates**

Create and send a message using S! Mail or SMS template.

- Press (□) and select *Templates*→ S! Mail templates or SMS templates
- 2 Highlight an S! Mail or SMS template
- 3 Select *Options* → *Send*

☐ Create a message and press (Send)

#### Tip

- To use after viewing an S! Mail template
  - 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2
  - ② Options → View
  - ③ Options → Play as required
  - **4** Options → Edit and send
- To register a template (◆P.4-15, 18-19)

## Attaching/Inserting Files

A file that can be attached/inserted to an S! Mail is limited in size to 294KB (except the message address, subject and message text size). Up to 20 files can be attached to one S! Mail.

#### Tip

To check the size of a message being created
 Select S! Mail as the Type of the message, the message size appears in the upper-right corner.

#### Note

- Note that some recipients may not be able to receive attachment or inserted files.
- Video files that cannot be sent by S! Mail (File size: over 294KB, Size: over 176 x 144, Quality: other than Economy, or etc.) are attached/inserted, the message indicating attaching/inserting failed appears.

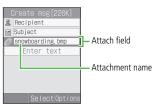
# Attaching/Inserting a File from Data Folder, etc. into Message Field

Attach images, video, and/or sounds saved in Data Folder to a message, as well as any contents saved in Phonebook and Calendar (converted as vCard format or vCalendar format). If you insert a file in Message field, display/play the file when you view the Message window.

## Attaching a File

# In Message creation window, Select Attach field

## Attach file



Message Creation Window (File Attached)

#### To attach file

- (1) Select *Data Folder*
- (2) Select a file from Data Folder

#### To attach Phonebook data as vCard file

- 1 Select Phonebook details
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- (Add)

#### To attach Calendar items as vCard file format

- (1) Select Calendar item
- 2 Select the items

#### Tip

#### To add a file

Perform Step 1 to 2 in "Attaching a file" (◆P.17-15)

#### . To check an attachment

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
- (2) Select a file

#### · If you attach a file

File type indicator and file name appears in Attach field.

②: Image③: Sound③: vCalendar

a: vCard a: File other than above

#### To replace a file

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
- (2) Highlight a file and select  $Options \rightarrow Replace$
- (3) Perform Step 2 in "Attaching a file" ( P.17-15)

#### • To delete a file

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
- ② Highlight a file and select *Options* → *Remove* → *Selected*

#### To delete all files

- ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Remove  $\rightarrow$  All  $\rightarrow$  Yes

#### • When files saved in Memory Card is attached

Removing Memory Card shows the message indicating the S! Mail is saved to Drafts; 705SC returns to Messaging menu. The saved S! Mail in Drafts has no attachment.

## **Inserting a File**

# In Message creation window, select Options → Insert

#### To insert a file with Slide Show set (♦P.17-12)

- ① In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field to insert a file
- ② Options → Insert

## Select file to insert



Message Creation Window (File Inserted)

#### To insert an image

- 1) Select *Image*
- Select an image from Data Folder

#### To insert sound

- (1) Select Sound
- (2) Select sound from Data Folder

#### To insert a video

- (1) Select Video
- (2) Select movie from Data Folder

#### Tip

#### To preview an inserted file

- (1) Options → Preview
- (2) Options → Play

#### · If you insert a file

In Message creation window, the icon indicating the file type, file name, and file size is displayed in Text entry field. If you inserted an image with no restrictions on its being displayed, the image will be shown in reduced size instead of the icon.

- : Images that cannot be displayed because of Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained
- : Sound

#### To replace a file

- (1) In Message creation window, highlight a file in Text entry field
- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Replace
- 3 Select a file, an entry, or a calendar item

#### To delete a file

- In Message creation window, highlight a file in Text entry field
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Remove  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### • To insert a file where another is inserted

A new Slide Show page is added automatically and the file is inserted. In case of an image file and sound file, both can be inserted on the same page.

### • When Memory Card file is inserted

Removing Memory Card shows the message indicating the S! Mail is saved to Drafts; 705SC returns to Messaging menu. The saved S! Mail in Drafts has no inserted file.

# Creating & Inserting a File

While creating a message, create a file and insert it. When Message window is opened, inserted file appears/plays.

# In Message creation window, select Options → Create & Insert

### To insert a file with Slide Show is set

- 1 In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field where a file to be inserted
- ② *Options* → *Create* & *Insert*

# 2 Select a creation method and insert the file

# To capture a photograph

- 1 Select Take picture
- 2 Press (Take)
- 3 Press (Add)

### To record video

- 1) Select Record video
- 2 Press (Record)
- 3 Press (Save)
- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Add to message

### To record sound

- 1 Select Record sound
- 2 Press (Record)
- 3 Press (Stop)
- 4 Options  $\rightarrow$  Add to message

### Tip

• If you insert a file

705SC works the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (◆P.17-17).

- To insert a file where another is inserted 705SC works the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (◆P.17-17).
- To replace or delete a file

  Perform operations the same way as the file inserted from

  Data Folder to Text entry field (♠P.17-17).
- Operations activated before and after capturing a still image (\$P.7-5)
- Operations activated before and after recording video (�P.7-11)
- Operations activated before and after recording sound (◆P.14-16)

# Saving Created Messages

# Save to Drafts

When message creation is interrupted before completion, etc., save the message being created to Drafts.

In Message creation window, select

Options → Save to Drafts

### Tip

• When 🐷 / 🔊 / 🗖 is pressed on Message creation window

When when something or attaching or inserting a file, a message appears asking whether to finish creating the message. Select *Yes* to save the created message to Drafts.

### Note

 Save to Drafts appears in Options after address, subject or text has been entered or a file is attached/ inserted.

# Save as a Template

By saving a message with fixed contents, etc. as an S! Mail templates, new S! Mail can be easily created and sent.

- In Message creation window, highlight Attach or Text entry field
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Save as template*

### Note

 Saved as template appears in Options only when a subject is entered or the message is longer than SMS, or when a file is inserted.

# Messaging Folders

# Viewing Messages

Five mailboxes are created on 705SC.

Mailbox	Message type
Received msgs	Received messages.
Drafts	Message drafts saved before completion.
Unsent msgs	Messages unsent because of failure or cancellation.
Sent msgs	Messages already sent or waiting to be sent.
Templates	S! Mail or SMS saved as templates.

### Tip

- To check message memory status
  - 1) Press ( ( )
  - (2) Select *Memory status*
  - (3) Select SMS, S! Mail (By count), or S! Mail (By size)
- To create a personal folder in Received msgs (♠P.18-15)

### Note

 When adding a new SMS to Drafts, Unsent msgs, or Sent msgs cause the maximum number of allowed message to be exceeded, the oldest SMS is deleted automatically.

# **Message Lists**

From list of *Received msgs* or *Unsent msgs*, view the messages.

Press <sup>□□</sup> (□)

2 Select Received msgs or Unsent msgs



**Received Message List** 

### From a personal folder in Received msgs

Select a folder; then Phone Password entry window appears, enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)

# 3 Select a message

# Tip

- In Message window, press or ## Switch between previous and next window.
- When pressing Side Keys in sms window Press Side Key in to enlarge font size by two levels; press Side Key in to reduce font size by one level
- To view a sent message
  - 1 In Step 2, select Sent msgs
  - (2) Highlight a message, select *Options* → *View*
- To view S! Mail details
   In Step 3, highlight a message, select Options → Details

# **Message List Window**

The following information appears in lists for each Messaging folder.



Received Message List

### Tip

### Received Message Indicators

趣: Unread S! Mail (Priority: High)

□: Unread S! Mail (Priority: Standard)

: Unread S! Mail (Priority: Low)

William: Unread S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)

: Unread S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)

: Unread S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)

▶: Read S! Mail (Priority: High)▶: Read S! Mail (Priority: Standard)

: Read S! Mail (Priority: Low)

:: Read S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)

: Read S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)

Read S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)

№: Unread reception notification (Priority: High)

■: Unread reception notification (Priority: Standard)

🕾: Unread reception notification (Priority: Low)

🛌: Read reception notification (Priority: High)

🗈: Read reception notification (Priority: Standard)

Read reception notification (Priority: Low)

: Read SMS (saved in USIM Card)

🚁 : Unread S! Mail Delivery Report

🗟 : Unread SMS Delivery Report

📸: Read SMS Delivery Report

: Receiving S! Mail

# • Draft Message Indicators

.★: S! Mail (Priority: High)

🖳: S! Mail (Priority: Standard)

🔛 : S! Mail (Priority: Low)

🔛: S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)

: S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)

: S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)

### • Unsent Message Indicators

5: S! Mail

S: S! Mail (Video and/or sound inserted)

: Sending S! Mail

## Sent Message Indicators

≅: S! Mail

: S! Mail (Video and/or sound inserted)

### Copy Protected file indicators

Attached/inserted copy protected file indicators

- ➡: Transferable, Content Key has already been purchased
- : Transferable, Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained
- : Nontransferable, Content Key has already been purchased
- : Nontransferable, Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained

### While Secret Mode is set to Hide

Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *On* for message receiver/ sender information; only the number or email addresses appear (instead of the name).

# **Message Window Operations**

# **Saving to Phonebook**

Save phone number/mail address of the sender/recipient to Phonebook while viewing Message window (Received)/ Reception notification window.

In Message window, select  $Options \rightarrow Add$  to  $Phonebook \rightarrow Phone$  or USIM

**?** Select *New* or *Update* 

To save as a new entry

Select New

# To save to an existing entry

- 1 Select *Update*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- 3 Select an icon
- **△** Save other items (⊕P.5-4)

# **5** Press (Save)

### Note

 When an underlined phone number, mail address or URL is highlighted in a message window, Add to Phonebook does not appear in Options.

# Saving as an S! Mail Template

Save received or sent S! Mail as an S! Mail template.

In Message window, select *Options* → *Save as S! Mail template* 

### Tip

- If a message appears indicating name duplication
  - 1 Press
  - 2 Press (Select) and enter the name
  - 3 Press (Save)
- When a name entry window has opened
  - 1) Press (Select) and enter the name
  - 2 Press (Save)

### Note

• While viewing S! Mail sent via PC, etc., Save as S! Mail template does not appear in Options.

# **Message Window Options**

Item	Description
Play	Play Slide Show, inserted video, or sound (�P.17-5).
Retrieved	Receive subsequent part of the notified message.
Reply	Reply to the sender of the reception notification.
Reply to all	Send reply to all entered S! Mail recipients.
Forward	Forward received message.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Delete	Delete displayed messages.
Save as S! Mail template	Add displayed S! Mail as an S! Mail template (�P.18-6).
Item copy	Save files attached or inserted in an S! Mail to Data Folder (�P.18-14).

Item	Description
Add to Phonebook	Save number or mail address to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (�P.18-5).
Details	Confirm S! Mail size, etc.
3D Pict. Disp.	Display a message in 3D Pictogram (◆P.20-5).
Move to Phone/ USIM	Move an SMS received or being sent to handset or USIM Card (�P.18-18).

# Replying to a Message

- Press <sup>...</sup> (□) and select *Received*msgs
- 2 Highlight message, select *Options* → *Reply*

To reply to all recipients entered in the S! Mail Highlight message, select  $Options \rightarrow Reply \ to \ all$ 

Greate a message and press (Send)

### Tip

- The subject of message replies
  - The subject of an S! Mail reply is prefixed with "RE:" automatically.
- While Reply with text is On

Under two line breaks, received message text is automatically entered in Text entry field.

### Note

 If shared memory (◆P.25-15) is less than 464KB, you cannot reply to a message. To reply to the message, delete messages.

# 🎜 Forwarding a Message

Forward a received or sent message to another recipient.

- Press <sup>™</sup> ( ) and select *Received*msgs or Sent msgs
- 2 Highlight message, select *Options* → *Forward*
- Greate a message and press (Send)

# Tip

The subject of forwarded messages
 The subject of a forwarded S! Mail is prefixed with "FW:" automatically.

### Note

 If shared memory (◆P.25-15) is less than 464KB, you cannot forward a message. To forward the message, delete messages.

# Sending from Drafts

- Press <sup>□□</sup> (□) and select *Drafts*
- Highlight the message and press (Send)

When Send does not appear

- 1 Press (Edit)
- 2 Enter address and press (Send)

# Sending from Unsent Messages

Send messages directly from Unsent Messages.

- Press  $(\square)$  and select *Unsent msgs*
- Highlight the message and press (Send)

# To send after modifying

- (1) Highlight the message, select  $Options \rightarrow Edit$
- 2) Edit the message and press (Send)

# Deleting a Message

# Deleting Specified Message(s)

Delete multiple specified messages. Alternatively, specify and delete saved templates.

Press 🚾 (🖂)

# **>** Select a mailbox

To delete a saved S! Mail or SMS templates
Select *Templates* → S! Mail templates or SMS
templates

# **3** Delete a Message or Template

# To delete one message or template

- 1 Highlight the message or template
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# To delete multiple messages or templates

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
- ② Check a message or template to delete
- (3) Repeat (2) to check all of the target messages or templates
- (4) Press (Delete) and proceed to (6) when all are not checked
- **5** Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)
- **6**) Select *Yes*

### Tip

- To view the contents of multiple messages or S! Mail templates while selecting them
  - (1) Repeat Steps 1 and 2
  - **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
  - ③ Highlight message or S! Mail template, select Options → View
- To collectively select/deselect multiple messages or S! Mail templates
  - 1 Repeat Steps 1 and 2
  - **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
  - (3) Options → Mark all or Unmark all
- To collectively select/deselect multiple SMS templates
  - 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2
  - **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
  - 3 Press (Mark all) or (Unmark all)

### Note

 While highlighting an S! Mail template designated as default, Delete does not appear in Options.

- Designating & Deleting a Mailbox
- Press [ (□) to select Settings →
  Delete all
- Check a mailbox to delete
- 3 Repeat Step 2 to check all target mailboxes
- 4 Press (Delete)
- 5 Enter Phone Password, and press (Confirm) to select *Yes*

# Deleting All Messages from a Mailbox

Delete saved templates all at once.

Press (⊠)

templates

- 2 Select a mailbox

  To delete an S! Mail or SMS template

  Select Templates → S! Mail templates or SMS
- **3** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Delete*  $\rightarrow$  *All*
- 4 Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

### Note

- Personal folders cannot be deleted by this operation. To delete Personal folders, perform the following operations: Messaging → Settings → Delete all
- You cannot delete the S! Mail template designated as the default.

# Linked Information

If Message window or Notification details window contains an underlined number, mail address, or URL; save it to Phonebook or use it to place a call, send messages, save bookmark, or access the site.

As linked information, following number of characters can be recognized for each S! Mail Font size setting:

Maximum of 45 lines (1,035 characters) for *Standard*, 54 lines (1,026 characters) for *Large*, and 41 lines (1,025 characters) for *Small*.

# Saving to Phonebook

In Message window, select a phone number, mail address, or URL and select Add to phonebook → Phone or USIM

2 Select saving method to create a new entry or update an existing entry

To save as a new entry

Select New

To save to an existing entry

- 1 Select *Update*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- **3** Select an icon
- **△** Save other items (⊕P.5-4)
- 5 Press (Save)

### Note

 When you select a URL, you cannot select USIM in Step 1.

# Saving as a Bookmark

- In Message window, select a URL and select *Bookmark*
- Press (Select) to enter a subject and press (Save)
- Initiating a Call, Sending a Message, or Accessing the Web

Use phone number/mail address/URL information in Message window or Notification details window.

In Message window, take procedures down below

### To initiate a Voice Call

Select a phone number and select *Voice call* 

### To initiate a Video Call

Select a phone number and select Video call

# To send a message

- ① Select a phone number or mail address and select Create msg
- 2 Create a message and press (Send)

### To access the Web

Select URL and select Go to URL

### Tip

Operations in Notification details window
 Phone number/mail address/URL information except in From (other party's phone number) can be used.

# 🗾 Using an Attachment

# Viewing an Attachment

Open images/play sounds attached to S! Mail. For vCard/vCalendar, open Details to see contents.

# Select a file and select *Open file*

### Tip

- To save a file in Data Folder directly
   In Message window, select a file → Save items
- To save vCard/vCalendar to Phonebook/Calendar directly

In Message window, select a file  $\rightarrow$  Register to Phonebook or Register to Calendar

- To register vCard/vCalendar to Phonebook/Calendar after viewing
  - 1 Perform Step 1
  - 2 Press (Register)

• When a file requiring Content Key is attached

If you perform Step 1, a message appears and you cannot open the file. To view the file, select *Save items* in Step 1 to save and purchase/obtain Content Key from Data Folder

(♠P.11-13).

 When an attachment has a restriction (only one time playback allowed)

When you perform Step 1, a message appears notifying you that only one time playback is allowed).

# Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save S! Mail attachment/inserted files to 705SC.

- In Message window, select *Options* → Save items
- **2** Perform file selection operation

To select and save one file

- 1 Highlight a file
- **2** Press  $\blacksquare$  (Select) or select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Selected*

# To select and save multiple files

- $\textcircled{1} Options \rightarrow Multiple$
- (2) Check the files to save
- 3 Repeat 2 to check all target files
- 4 Press (Save)

### To save all files

 $Options \rightarrow All$ 

### Tip

- To select or deselect multiple files at once
  - 1 In Step 2, select  $Options \rightarrow Multiple$
  - 2 Press : (Mark all) or : (Unmark all)
- When a popup message appears indicating the file name is a duplicate while saving
  - 1 Press
  - (Select) and change the file name
  - (Save)

### Note

 When a file is highlighted in Message window, Save items does not appear in Options.

# Managing Folders

Create personal folders in Received msgs; organize and save in the folders for each mail types. Set own security setting for personal folders.

# Create Folder

- Press <sup>□□</sup> (□) and select *Received*msgs
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Create folder*
- 3 Enter a name

# Edit Folder

Change name for personal folders.

- Press <sup>(□</sup> (□) and select *Received*msgs
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Edit folder*

# 3 Enter a name

# Security ON/OFF

Set Security setting for a personal folder; require Phone Password entry to check messages in the personal folder.

- Press <sup>□□</sup> (□) and select *Received*msgs
- 2 Highlight the personal folder, select Options → Security ON/OFF
- 3 Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm), then select *Yes*

### Tip

- Folder with Security setting
  - appears indicating Security setting has been selected.

# • With Security On

Select personal folders; Phone Password entry window appears. Enter Phone Password and press [ Message list window in the personal folder appears.

# Moving Messages

Move this

Press <sup>□□</sup> (□) and select Received msgs

To move messages in personal folder to another personal folder Select a personal folder

- Highlight message, select *Options* →
- 3 Select the destination folder
  To return messages to Received msgs
  Select Received msgs

# Delete Folder

- Press <sup>□</sup> (□) and select *Received*msgs
- 2 Highlight the personal folder, select Options → Delete folder → Yes
  To select personal folder with Security On Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)
- 3 Select Yes

# 🎜 From Message List

# Saving to Phonebook

- Press <sup>□</sup> (□) and select *Received*msgs, *Unsent msgs* or *Sent msgs*
- 2 Highlight message, select *Options* → *Add to Phonebook*

- 3 Select a phone number or mail address and select *Phone* or *USIM*
- 4 Select saving method to create a new entry or update an existing entry

To save as a new entry

Select New

To save to an existing entry

- 1) Select *Update*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- **5** Select an icon
- 6 Enter additional items as required (⊕P.5-4)
- 7 Press (Save

# Sorting Messages

Available sorting types to display vary by Message list window of the mailbox.

- In Message list window, select

  Options → Sort by
- Select an item

To sort in descending order of date

Select *Date* 

To sort by sender

Select Sender

To sort by recipient

Select Recipient

To view read and unread messages separately

Select Unread to read or Read to unread

# To view messages separately by type

Select Message type

# To sort by subject

Select Subject

To sort in descending order of message size Select Size

# Tip

- Listing order when selecting Message type
   Listed in the order of SMS → S! Mail (Including message notification) → SMS saved in USIM Card.
- Listing order when selecting *Sender, Recipient,* or *Subject*

Listed in the order of single-byte symbol  $\rightarrow$  single-byte number  $\rightarrow$  single-byte alphabet  $\rightarrow$  single-byte Katakana  $\rightarrow$  double-byte symbol  $\rightarrow$  double-byte Hiragana  $\rightarrow$  double-byte Katakana  $\rightarrow$  Kanji  $\rightarrow$  double-byte number  $\rightarrow$  double-byte alphabet. But if Subject is selected, messages with no subject are listed at the top.

# Move to Phone/Move to USIM

Move received SMS or sent SMS. Save up to ten messages to USIM Card.

- Press (□) and select *Received*msgs or Sent msgs
- **?** Move messages

### To move from USIM Card to 705SC

- 1) Highlight an SMS saved on USIM Card
- 2 Options  $\rightarrow$  Move to phone

### To move from 705SC to USIM Card

- 1) Highlight an SMS saved in USIM Card
- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Move to USIM

### Tip

- Message List SMS Indicators

  - : Read SMS (USIM Card)
  - : Sent SMS
  - : Sent SMS (USIM Card)
- To move received SMS in personal folder to USIM Card

A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to complete the move.

# Saving an S! Mail Template

For more information about saving an SMS template, see "SMS Templates" (♠P.4-15).

- Press ( ) and select *Templates*  $\rightarrow S!$  *Mail templates*
- **2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Add new*

- 3 Select Subject field or Text entry field and enter a subject or message
- 4 Press (Save)

### Tip

- To view an S! Mail template being created In Step 3, select *Options* → *Preview*
- To display and view an S! Mail template
  In Step 2, highlight S! Mail template, select *Options* → View
- To modify an S! Mail template
  - ① In Step 2, select a registered S! Mail template and perform modification operation
  - 2 Press (Save)
- To delete an S! Mail template
   Perform the same operation as for a message (◆P.18-9).
- To copy, cut, or paste characters (♠P.4-12)
- To use contents of an SMS template or Phonebook (♠P.4-10)

### • To change the font size of characters being entered

- ① In Step 3, select Text entry field, select  $Options \rightarrow Font$  Size
- 2 Select any of *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*
- To set/release the prediction entry function (P.4-13)
- Setting Slide Show/inserting a file
  - (1) In Step 3, select *Options* → *Insert* or *Create & Insert*
  - ② Perform setting, attaching, or inserting operation
    (③P.17-12, 17-16, 17-18)
- To view the text in 3D Pictogram
  In Step 3, highlight Text entry field, select *Options* → *3D Pict. Disp.*

# Message List Options

Item	Description
Retrieve	Retrieve complete S! Mail from the Server.
Reply	Reply to the sender ( P.18-7).
Reply to all	Send reply to all entered S! Mail recipients (�P.18-7).
Forward	Forward received message ( P.18-8).

Item	Description
Move this	Move received mails to a personal folder (�P.18-16).
Create folder	Create a personal folder (�P.18-15).
Edit folder	Change personal folder name (◆P.18-15).
Security On/Off	With Security setting $On$ , enter Phone Password to check mails in a personal folder ( $\bigcirc$ P.18-15).
Delete folder	Delete a personal folder (◆P.18-16).
View	Open sent messages or S! Mail templates (♠P.18-3, 18-19).
Edit	Edit unsent message ( P.18-8).
Delete	Delete messages or templates (�P.18-9, 18-11).
Move to phone/ Move to USIM	Move SMS between 705SC and USIM Card (�P.18-18).
Sort by	Sort messages (�P.18-17).
Add to Phonebook	Save number or mail address to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (�P.18-16).
Details	Check memory status in a personal folder or confirm S! Mail size, etc.

Item	Description
Cancel retrieving	Stop message retrieval from Mail Server.
Send	Send message using S! Mail template or SMS template (�P.17-14).
Add new	Save a new S! Mail template or SMS template (�P.4-15, 18-19).

# Server Mail

# Message List

View messages stored on the Mail Server in a list form. Retrieve, forward, or delete messages.

# Acquire Mail List

- Press <sup>□</sup> (□) and select *Server mail* box
- 2 Select Acquire Mail List

### Tip

- To check Mail Server usage state
  - (1) Select Server mail volume in Step 2
  - ② Press (Update) and select *Yes* to update to the latest information

# Download

- Press ( ) and select *Server mail* box
- 2 Select Mail List
- 3 Highlight the message, select *Options*→ *Download*

### Tip

• To receive all messages from Message list window In Step 2, select *Retrieve All Mail* 

# Delete

- Press  $(\square)$  and select Server mail box
- **?** Select *Mail List*
- **3** Delete unwanted messages

To delete one message

- 1 Highlight a message
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# To delete multiple messages

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
- (2) Check a message to delete
- (3) Repeat (2) to check all target messages to delete
- 4 Press (Delete) and go to 6 if unmarking all
- **5** Enter Phone Password and press (Confirm)
- **6** Select *Yes*

# To delete all messages

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  All
- ② Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*

### Tip

- To select/deselect multiple messages at once
  - 1 Perform Steps 1 and 2
  - **2** Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
  - ③ Options → Mark all or Unmark all

# Remote Forward

Forward a message from the Mail Server to another address. Contents except the address are sent without modification.

- Press <sup>□</sup> (□) and select *Server mail* box
- **?** Select *Mail List*
- 3 Highlight message, select *Options* → *Remote Forward*

# **4** Enter an address

# To directly enter an address

- ① Select Entry field and select *Enter Recipient*
- 2 Enter a phone number or mail address

# To enter an address using a log

Select Entry field and select a displayed log entry

### To select an address from Phonebook

- 1 Select Entry field and select *From Phonebook*
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- (3) Highlight a phone number or mail address and press ::: (Select)

# To select an address from Category of Phonebook

- 1 Select Entry field and select *From Category*
- ② Select a Category, with/without an Address selection window, highlight an address and press (Select)

# **5** Select *Options* $\rightarrow$ *Send*

### Tip

# • Message subject

The subject of a forwarded message is prefixed with "FW:" automatically.

### • To set other sending options for a message

- (1) In Step 5, select  $Options \rightarrow Sending options$
- ② Select an item and perform operations to set (�P.20-2)
- 3 Press (Apply)

### • To delete an address

In Step 5, highlight a recipient, select  $Options \rightarrow Remove$ 

- To change the address type to To, Cc, or Bcc
  - ① In Step 5, highlight a recipient, select *Options* → *Change recipients*
  - (2) Select any of To, Cc, or Bcc

# Other Message Settings

# Customizing Handset **Address**

Change your mail address (alphanumerics before @) used for sending and receiving S! Mail to/from PC, etc. The default account name consists of random alphanumerics.

- Press  $(\square)$  and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$ S! Mail  $\rightarrow$  Mail Address setting
- **>** Follow onscreen instructions
- 🗷 S! Mail Settings
- **Sending Settings**

- Default Setting Priority: Normal Expiration: Maximum
  - Delivery: Immediately
  - Request delivery report: Unchecked

Set options related to sending S! Mail. Alternatively, set sending options separately for each S! Mail to send (**●**P.17-11).

20-2

- Press  $\bigcirc$  ( $\bigcirc$ ) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$ S! Mail  $\rightarrow$  Sending options
- Select an item and set

# Message priority

- (1) Select *Priority*
- (2) Select a level and press

# Mail Server Retention Period (before expiry)

- (1) Select *Expiration*
- (2) Select an item and enter a time if you selected Custom time (Hour)
- (3) Press

# Mail Server Retention Period (before delivery)

- (1) Select *Delivery*
- (2) Select an item and press

# **Delivery report request**

Check Request delivery report

### Tip

- When retention set in Expiration expires
   The S! Mail is deleted automatically from the Mail Server.
- When retention is set in *Delivery* When the specified time has elapsed, the S! Mail is sent from the Mail Server.
- When Request delivery report is checked
   When an S! Mail is sent from the Mail Server, a distribution report is sent to your handset.

# Receiving Settings

Default Setting 

Home network: Manual

■ Roaming network: Manual

Set options related to receiving S! Mail.

Press  $\bigcirc$  ( $\bigcirc$ ) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *S! Mail*  $\rightarrow$  *Receiving options* 

# **>** Select an item and set

To set the receiving method to use in Japan

- 1 Select *Home network*
- Select an item and press

# To set the receiving method while overseas

- 1 Select *Roaming network*
- 2 Select an item and press

# 3 Press 🚾 (Save)

### Tip

 Home network and Roaming network Items Auto download: Receive automatically. Manual: Receive only reception notification.

# Message Size

Default Setting = 300KB

Deactivate sending messages exceeding the specified size.

- Press  $(\square)$  and select Settings  $\rightarrow$  S! Mail  $\rightarrow$  Message size
- 2 Select an item and press (Save)

# Default Style

Default Setting Font color: Black Font size: Large

Background color: White
 Slide interval: Custom time (3 seconds)

Set font color, font style, background color, and Slide Show time intervals. Alternatively, change display settings for each S! Mail sent (�P.17-12).

Press □ (□) and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Default style* 

# 2 Set options

### Font color

- 1) Select *Font color*
- ②Use **t** to highlight a color and press

### To set a font size

- 1 Select Font Size
- Select an item and press

# **Background color**

- 1 Select *Background color*
- ② Use to highlight a color and press

### Slide Show time intervals

- 1) Select *Slide interval*
- (2) Select an item, with *Custom time*, enter a time
- 3 Press
- 3 Press (Save)

# SMS Settings

- Default Setting Delivery report: Unchecked
  - Character support: Automatic

Set options related to sending SMS. Alternatively, set options for each SMS to send (♠P.17-11).

Press  $\bigcirc$  ( $\bigcirc$ ) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$ **SMS** 

# Set options

Request a delivery report

Check *Delivery report* 

Change the character set of fonts used in the text

- (1) Select *Character support*
- (2) Select an item and press

### Tip

• When Delivery report is checked

When an SMS is sent from the Mail Server, a distribution report is sent to your handset.

# 3D Pictogram Settings

- Default Setting Display type: New mails only
  - Background: Pattern 1
  - Running Speed: Normal

3D Pictogram is a function that allows you to display in 3D animation for words, pictograms, or emoticons in message text.

Activate or deactivate 3D Pictogram or set the background color and display speed.

Press  $\bigcirc$  ( $\bigcirc$ ) and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$ 3D pictogram

20

# **2** Set options

### Whether to use 3D Pictogram

- 1 Select *Display type*
- ② Select an item and press (Save)

### **Background pattern and font colors**

- 1 Select Background
- ② Press , display the pattern and press (Save)

### To set a display speed

- 1 Select Running speed
- ② Select an item and press (Save)

### Tip

### • The contents of *Display type* are:

Always: Use 3D Pictogram when viewing every message.
New mails only: Use 3D Pictogram only when viewing an unread message received.

OFF: Not use 3D Pictogram.

### Note

 Such as file-attached/Slide Show set S! Mail may not appear properly in 3D Pictogram.

# Reply with text

Default Setting Off

When creating reply message, set to include received message text.

- Press  $(\square)$  and select *Settings*  $\rightarrow$  *Reply with text*
- → Select an item and press (Save)

### Tip

• The contents of Reply with text are:

On: Reply with text including received message text.

Off: Reply with text not including received message text.



# Getting Started

### Web

From a handset, access to Yahoo! Keitai and the Web to browse various sites or download images, sounds, etc.

A separate subscription is required to use the Web.

# Accessing from the Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

From the Yahoo! Keitai main menu, select a menu items to access various contents.

### **Internet Accessing**

Enter a URL and access pages.

### SSL/TLS

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication. Confirm electronic certificates saved on 705SC (�P.22-14, 23-4).

### ➡ SSL/TLS Precautions

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., and Entrust Japan Co., Ltd. are not liable for damages associated with SSL/TLS use.

### Cache

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved here. Cache remains even after a session ends or 705SC is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones. When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest version, reload the page (�P.22-13).

### Tip

- To manually delete Cache contents (♠P.23-4)
- When another USIM Card is inserted into 705SC Cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved Page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

# Getting Online

# Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu

Alternatively, press (Y) for 1+ seconds

Yahoo! Keitai menu appears. Select *Yahoo! Keitai* to open Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

# Select an item

### Tip

When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time
 After Step 1, Time & date settings window appears; set time
 & date to display Information window.

- Enter URL
  - Press (Menu) and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Enter URL*
- Select URL field and enter a URL
- 3 Press (Go to)

### Tip

- To save the entered URL as a bookmark
  - 1 In Step 2, check *Add bookmark*
  - (2) Select Title field and enter title
  - 3 Press (Go to)
- To access a page from the access history (◆P.22-11)

# Page Window Operations

Operations on pages are as follows.

# **Scrolling**

Scroll bar appears when page content extends beyond current view.



\sumsymbol / \sumsymbol : Scroll down by one line

When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use do scroll right

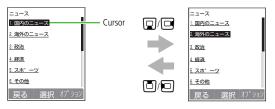
(ine)/ Scroll up by one line

When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use to scroll left

Side Key : Scroll page down by multiple lines
Side Key : Scroll page up by multiple lines

# **Moving Cursor**

When selecting an item such as link, move cursor to that item.



down

When the page is already scrolled to the bottom, alternatively, press Side Key 🗓 to move cursor down

(up) When items are listed vertically, move cursor

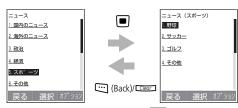
When the page is already scrolled to the top, alternatively, press Side Key 📵 to move cursor up

### Tip

- When items are listed in the same row Press to move cursor right or left.
- When you move cursor

The selected item is highlighted or enclosed in a frame of dotted lines if it is link to another page.

# **Previous or Next Page**



Highlight link, etc. and press : Display the next page

Alternatively, select  $Options \rightarrow Forward$  to change the window

(Back) or Clear: Display the previous page

### Tip

If : (Back)/ is pressed with no previous page displayed

A message appears asking whether to terminate the Web connection; select *Yes* to terminate the Web connection.

# **Text Entry/Item Selection**

An information window may show fields and items given below.



# 1 Text entry field

Enter data, certification passwords, etc.; highlight Text entry field, press and enter text

### Radio button

Select only one of the selection items. Highlight an item with 

and press 

to select it (Appearing as 
).

### **3** Menu field

Display a menu and select an item. Highlight a menu, press to display the menu. Use to highlight the item and press to select the item. When multiple items can be selected for Menu field, press to cancel multiple selections.

# 4 Check box

Select any number of selection items. Highlight an item with and press to select it (Appearing as ). To deselect a selected item, highlight and press .

### **6** Command button

Perform operations assigned to a button such as *send* or *reset*. Highlight a command button and press to execute the operation.

### Note

• The appearance of text entry or item selection varies by page opened.

# Using Linked Info

Use phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs contained on an page to initiate calls, create and send messages, and access other pages.

Available phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs are underlined.

# **Using Page Links**

- Open a page containing linked info
- Use the available links

To initiate a Voice Call

Select a phone number and select Voice Call

To create and send messages

- ① Select a phone number or mail address and select Create message
- ② Create messages and press •••• (Send)

**To access another page** Select a URL

# **Saving to Phonebook**

Open a page with linked number or address

- 2 Select a number or address and select

  Save Number or Save Address →

  Phone or USIM
- 3 Create a new entry or update an existing entry

To save as a new entry

Select New

To add to an existing entry

- 1) Select *Update*
- ② Search for an existing entry to modify (◆P.5-9)
- 4 Select an icon
- **5** Save the item (**⑤**P.5-4)
- 6 Press (Save)

# Mobile Internet Files

# Using Image Files

# Saving Images to Data Folder

# **Saving Linked Images**

Download and save images from page links.

- **Open a page containing an image link**
- **>** Select link
- 3 Press

When details appear

Press 🔳

4 Press Clear

To open the image

Press (Launch)

To set saved image as Wallpaper

# **Saving Page Images**

Save a page image to Data Folder.

- Open a page with an image
- **?** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Save*  $\rightarrow$  *Save image*
- Highlight the image and press (Save)
- 4 Press Clear

To open the image

Press (Launch)

To set saved image as Wallpaper

5 Press to end the operation

To save another image

Repeat Step 3

### Tip

- . If the same file name exists
  - 1) Press (Edit) and change the file name
  - 2 Press (Save)
- Viewing images
  - Press (Set as) to set Wallpaper. (♦ P.22-3).
  - Press (Zoom) to enlarge or reduce the image. Press (Details) to view image details.
- When SVG-T/SWF format file is saved

*Options* appears on the save image confirmation window, then select *Options* and execute various operations (◆P.11-8).

# Wallpaper

Set a saved image as Wallpaper.

- Open image to set as Wallpaper (⊕P.22-2)
- 2 Press (Set as)
- 3 Select an item

To set as Wallpaper

- 1 Select Wallpaper
- 2 Press (Set)

# To set as incoming image for Phonebook entries

- 1 Select Caller ID
- ② Search Phonebook and select an entry (◆P.5-9)
- 3 Press (Set)

### To set as outgoing image

- 1 Select TV call Still picture
- 2 Press (Save)

### Note

For SVG-T/SWF format file, Settings does not appear.
 For Wallpaper, open Data Folder and open an image (◆P.11-8).

# Using Sound Files

Playing Sound

Play sounds from page links.

**Open a page containing link** 

Select link to sound

# Saving Sound Files to Data Folder

Download sound files from page links and save them to Data Folder.

- Open a page containing a sound link
- Select link
- 3 Press

When details appear

Press

4 Select *Exit* 

To play sound

Select Launch

# **Saving Sound Being Played**

Save sound played in the background while viewing a page.

Open a page with sound

**2** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Save*  $\rightarrow$  *Save sound* 

3 Press Clear

To play sound

Press (Launch)

To set saved sound as Ringtone

Press (Set as) and perform Step 3 in "Setting Sound File as Ringtone" (◆P.11-11)

### Tip

- If same file name exists
  - 1 Press (Edit) and change the file name
  - 2 Press (Save)
- To play sounds

Press (Set as) and set saved sound as Ringtone (P.11-11). For other operations, refer to *Media Player* (P.10-3).

# Options

The items listed vary by the window status.

Item	Description	
Stop	Stop playing.	
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.	
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.	
Details	Confirm sound size, etc.	
Player settings	Select settings related to Media Player (�P.10-7).	

# Using Video Files

# Playing a Video

Play video from a page link.

- Open a page containing a video link
- **>** Select link

# Saving Videos to Data Folder

Download and save videos from page links.

- Open a page containing a video link
- **>** Select link
- 3 Press

When details appear

Press

4 Press Clear

### To play video

Press (Launch)

### To set saved video as Ringtone

### Tip

- . If same file name exists
  - 1 Press (Edit) and change the file name
  - 2 Press (Save)
- To play video

### Options

The items listed vary by the window status.

Item	Description	
Resolution	Set video display size while playing or paused.	
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.	

Item	Description	
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.	
Details	Set video display size while playing or paused.	
Player settings	Select settings related to Media Player (◆P.10-11).	

# 🞜 Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it downloads. Access compatible files via page links, etc. Downloaded content cannot be saved.

# Open a page containing a streaming video link

# **>** Select link

### Tip

• To stream files
Operate the same as *Media Player* (◆P.10-3, 10-9).

### Note

 Even when use of streaming is temporarily stopped, communications continue, so packet communication fees continue.

# Options

The items listed vary by the window status.

Item	Description	
Resolution	Set video display size while playing or paused.	
Add bookmark	During accessing, save a page containing a streaming play link as a bookmark.	
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.	
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.	

# Saving Pages

# Saving a Page

Save a displayed page and open it at any time without accessing the Web. Up to 50 pages can be saved.

- **Open a page**
- 2 Select Options → Saved pages → Save
- Opening a Saved Page
- **2** Select a page

# Change Title

- 2 Highlight a page, select *Options* → *Rename*
- 3 Press (Edit) and change the name
- 4 Press (Save)

# Deleting a Saved Page

- **P** Delete as required

### To delete one page

- 1 Highlight a page
- (2) Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

### To delete multiple pages

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
- (2) Check a page to delete
- (3) Repeat Step (2) to check all target pages
- (4) Press (Delete) and select Yes

### To delete all pages

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  All
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press (OK) and select Yes

### Tip

- To select/deselect multiple pages at once
  - 1 In Step 2, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple$
  - ② Options → Selected/All

# Saving Bookmarks

# Saving an Address as a Bookmark

By saving the Web addresses (URLs) of frequently used pages as bookmarks, access those pages. Up to 30 URLs can be saved as bookmarks.

**Open a page** 

2 Select *Options* → *Bookmarks* → *Add* to *Bookmarks* 

# **?** Check the title and URL

### To change the title/URL

- 1) Select Title or URL field
- (2) Change a title or URL
- 4 Press (Save)

### Tip

- To manually enter and save a bookmark
  - ① Press (Menu) and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*
  - **②** Options → Add bookmark
  - 3 Select Subject field and enter a subject
  - (4) Select URL field and enter a URL
  - **5** Press (Save)

# Opening a Bookmark

- **2** Select a bookmark

### Tip

- To send a bookmark URL in a message
  - ① In Step 2, highlight a bookmark, select Options → Send URL
  - 2 Create a message and press (Send)

# Editing Bookmarks

Modify the title or URL of bookmark.

- Press (Menu) and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*
- 2 Highlight a bookmark, select *Options*→ *Edit hookmark*
- 3 Select Title field or URL field, and modify the title or URL
- 4 Press (Save)

# Deleting a Bookmark

- Delete as required

### To delete one bookmark

- 1 Highlight a bookmark
- 2 Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Selected  $\rightarrow$  Yes

# To delete multiple bookmarks

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
- (2) Check a bookmark to delete
- **3** Repeat **2** to check all target bookmarks
- (4) Press (Delete) and select Yes

### To delete all bookmarks

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  All
- 2 Enter Phone Password, press (OK) and select Yes

### Tip

- To select/deselect multiple bookmarks at once
  - (1) In Step 2, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple$
  - **②** Options → Selected/All

# 🞜 History

The history records up to 30 URLs of accessed pages. Using the history, access pages previously accessed.

- Use the history

To access a page from the history URL Select URL

### To delete a history URL

- 1 Highlight the URL
- ② *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

### To delete multiple histories

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
- ② Check a history to delete
- 3 Repeat 2 to check all target histories
- 4 Press (Delete) and select Yes

### To delete all histories

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  All
- ② Enter Phone Password, press (OK) and select Yes

### Tip

- To select/deselect multiple histories collectively
  - 1 In Step 2, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple$
  - ②  $Options \rightarrow Selected/All$

# Display Settings

# Rendering

Default Setting Standard

Set pages to match Display size or show only text.

- Open a page
- **2** Select *Options* → *Rendering*
- 3 Select an item

To display a page without changing its layout Select *Wide* 

To display a page to fit Display

Select Standard

To display only page text

Select Simple

# Search Text

- **Display information window**
- **2** Select *Options* → *Search text*
- 3 Select Text entry field and enter the word
- 4 Select the searching direction and press (Search)

# Copy Text

- **Display information window**
- **?** Select *Options* → *Copy Text*
- 3 In a text entry window, select *Options*  $\rightarrow Copy$

- 4 Use to move cursor on the first character and press (Start)

  To copy all texts in text entry window

  Press (All) to copy
- 5 Use to specify the range and press (End)

# Reload

- ] Open a page
- **2** Select *Options* → *Reload*

# Page Details

View current page information including URL and page title.

- ] Open a page
- 2 Select Options → Browser setting → Page details

# Send URL

Attach the URL of the current page to a message and send it.

- Open a page
- **?** Select *Options*  $\rightarrow$  *Send URL*
- 3 Create a message and press [::] (Send)

# Server Certificate

View server certificates of a page using a SSL/TLS connection.

- Open a secure page
- 2 Select Options → Browser setting → Certificates
- **3** Select *Server certification* and select a certificate

### Tip

- When you open a page that uses SSL/TLS
  - appears on the top of Display.

# Returning to Default Page

Return to the Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

- **]** Open a page
- **2** From any page, select *Options* → *Yahoo! Keitai*

# Encoding

### Default Setting = Auto

If page text appears garbled, change character encoding.

- Open a page
- 2 Select Options → Browser setting → Encoding
- **3** Select an option and press **■** (Save)

# Information Window Options

Item	Description	
Forward	Move to the next information window (�P.21-5).	
Bookmark	Add or open bookmarks (♠P.22-9).	
Saved pages	Save information windows to Saved pages. Display information window from Saved pages (◆P.22-8, 22-8).	
Text search  Search text in information window (♠P.22-13).		
Reload	Reload the information for a page (�P.22-13).	
Enter URL	Enter a URL to open another site/page (◆P.21-3).	
Rendering	Change the displaying method for pages (♠P.22-15).	
Copy text	Copy text in information window (�P.22-13).	
Save	Save images and sounds to Data Folder (�P.22-2, 22-4).	
Send URL Send URLs of a page in a message (♠P.22-14).		

Item		Description		
His	story	Access a page you have already visited (◆P.22-11).		
Ya	hoo! Keitai	Return to the Yahoo! Keitai main menu (②P.22-15).		
Br	owser setting	Make detailed settings for Web Browser.		
	Text size	Set text size in information window (�P.23-3).		
	Downloads	Set various settings for image/sound downloads (�P.23-2).		
	Empty cache	Delete all information from the cache.		
	Empty cookies	Delete all cookies (tokens left by various Web sites on your handset).		
	Cookie options	Activate or deactivate cookies.		
	Certificates	View the certificate (�P.22-14, 23-4).		
	Page details	View the detailed information about a page (�P.22-14).		
	Manufacture No.	Set whether to notify a Web site of your handset's serial number.		
	Encoding	Change the character codes set for the page currently displayed (�P.22-15).		

Item		Description	
Java Script Set Java Script		Set Java Script on/off (♠P.23-3).	
	About	View detailed information about the browse	
	browser	view detailed information about the browser.	

# Other Web Settings

# Preferences

Default Setting Display images: Checked

■ Play sound: Checked

Set 705SC to deactivate embedded images/sounds when opening pages. Pages download more quickly without image and sound data.

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Yahoo!*  $Keitai \rightarrow Browser\ settings \rightarrow$ Downloads
- Perform operations to set

To deactivate images

- 1 Select *Display images*
- (2) Select an item and press (Save)

To deactivate sounds

- (1) Select *Play sound*
- (2) Select an item and press (Save)

# Security

# **Cookie Options**

Default Setting = Accept all

Activate or deactivate Cookies that allow information providers to automatically record information identifying handset user. User information, access date, and other information are saved in Cookies.

- Press ( (Menu) and select *Yahoo!*  $Keitai \rightarrow Browser\ settings \rightarrow Cookie$ options
- Select an item and press (■) (Save)

### Tip

• The contents of Cookie options are:

Accept all: Always accept Cookies. Reject all: Always reject Cookies.

*Prompt*: Confirm Cookies each time they appear.

# Activating/Deactivating Java Script

# Default Setting = Off

- Press (Menu) and select Yahoo!
  Keitai →Browser settings → Java
  script
- 2 Select an item and press (Save)

# Text Size

# Default Setting = Normal

Change the size of the page fonts.

- Press (Menu) and select Yahoo!

  Keitai  $\rightarrow$ Browser settings  $\rightarrow$  Text size
- 2 Select an item and press (Save)

# Manufacture Number

# Default Setting = Off

Set 705SC to automatically send handset serial number to Websites upon request for user identification.

- 2 Select an item and press (Save)

# Browser Information

# Certificates

View electronic certificate saved on 705SC.

- Open a page using SSL/TLS
- 2 Select Options → Browser setting → Certificates
- 3 Select *Root certificate* to view the certificate

# Refresh Browser

# Empty Cache/Empty Cookies

Delete information saved in Cache and Cookies.

- Delete as required

To delete Cache contents

Select  $Empty\ cache \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Yes)

To delete Cookies

Select  $Empty \ cookies \rightarrow \blacksquare$  (Yes)

# S! Appli

# ر is

# Getting Started

# S! Appli

Download 705SC-compatible S! Appli including games, 3D images, and information via Mobile Internet sites.

- Use only compatible S! Appli.
- To download S! Appli, separate subscription is required and communication fees apply.

# Network S! Appli

Some S! Appli require network connection. Enjoy network gaming or access real-time information like stock prices.

- A separate subscription is required to download S! Appli or use those which require network connection.
- Connection fees apply.

# 🗾 Downloading S! Appli

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Application list
- 2 Select Download S! Appli
- 3 Select S! Appli to download
- 4 Select Yes

When details appear Press

5 Select Exit

To activate S! Appli

Select Launch

# Starting S! Appli

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Application list
- 2 Select S! Appli and press (Start)

### Tip

When S! Appli is active
 appears.

# Exit, Pause, & Resume

- Exiting or Pausing S! Appli
- Press while a S! Appli is being executed
- **?** Choose to exit/pause

To exit S! Appli

Press (Exit)

To pause S! Appli

Press (Pause)

### Tip

When S! Appli is paused

705SC returns to Standby and A appears.

# Restarting a Paused S! Appli

- In Standby with S! Appli paused, press (Menu) and select S! Appli
- 2 Press (Resume)

# Managing S! Appli

# Details

Open *Details* to confirm S! Appli properties.

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Application list
- 2 Highlight a S! Appli, select *Options* → *Details*

### Tip

• S! Appli properties

Open *Details* to see following properties: Name, Description, Profiles, Certification, Size, Record Size, Version, and Vendor.

# Lock/Unlock

Lock S! Appli to prevent accidental deletion.

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Application list
- 2 Highlight S! Appli, select *Options* → *Lock*

### Tip

- Locked S! Appli Indicator
  - In S! Appli list, 🗎 appears.
- To cancel lock
   In Step 2, highlight locked S! Appli, select Options →
   Unlock

# Delete

Press ■ (Menu) and select *S! Appli*→ *S! Application list* 

# 2 Delete S! Appli

To delete one S! Appli

*Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes* 

To delete multiple S! Appli

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  Multiple
- 2 Check S! Appli to delete
- (3) Repeat Step (2) to check all target S! Appli
- (4) Press (Delete) and select *Yes*

### To delete all S! Appli

- $\bigcirc$  Options  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$  All
- ② Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*
- ③ Select *Yes* to delete all S! Appli or *No* to exclude locked ones

### Tip

- . When all S! Appli are checked
  - In Step 2, perform ① to ③ in "To delete multiple S! Appli," press [...] (Delete) in ④ and proceed the following procedures
  - ① Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select Yes
  - ② Select Yes to delete all S! Appli or No to exclude locked ones
- To select/deselect multiple S! Appli at once
  - (1) In Step 2, select  $Options \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow Multiple$
  - (2) Options → Mark all or Unmark all

# 🥦 mPet

With 705SC mPet, raise your own virtual pet. Train or enjoy playing games with.

# Selecting Pet

Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  S! Application list  $\rightarrow$  mPet  $\rightarrow$  Yes

2 Use to select pet and press (Select)

To select pet after checking action

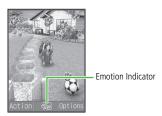
Options → animate and press 

(Select)

To select pet after checking direction  $Options \rightarrow turn$  and press  $\Box$  (Select)

3 Enter a name

4 Select *Yes* and press



mPet Window

### Tip

• After selecting your pet

Garden appears. Train or tame in this location. Play game with in other rooms. Activating mPet shows the location last used.

· Pet action in mPet window

After a while with no action to pet; pet starts to play alone, bark, shows it's emotional text bubble. With low battery, pet gets down and starts sniffing.

• To end mPet

Press Clear or

- To set mPet as Wallpaper (◆P.8-2)
- mPet Help

Use mPet Help to see other operations. In mPet window, select  $Options \rightarrow Help$  or press i while Help appears.

# **mPet Operations**

# **Window Operations**

In Options, set Navigation to Shortcut mode, then press corresponding button to select operation; set *Navigation* to *Walking mode*, then use to move pet to specified location and select operation. Available operations in each location are listed below.

	Operation		
Location	Shortcut mode	Walking mode (Window area)	Description
	1 8	Notes	Play the <i>Ding</i>
		(Upper Left)	Dong game.
	2 abc	Front Door	Move to Living
Garden		(Upper)	Room.
Garden	3 def	Flower Bed	Go for a walk.
		(Upper Right)	
	4 ghi	Ball	Play the <i>Stanza</i>
		(Down Right)	game.

	Operation		
Location	Shortcut mode	Walking mode (Window area)	Description
Living Room	1 8	Door (Upper Left)	Move to Garden.
	2 obc	Back Door (Upper Right)	Move to Kitchen.
	1 % 20	Back Door (Upper Left)	Move to Living Room.
	2 abc	Door (Upper Right)	Move to Bed Room.
Kitchen	3 def	Bowl (Down Right)	Feed full meal.
	4 ghi	Today's Saying (Down Left)	Display Today's Saying.
	5 <sup>‡</sup> <sub>jkl</sub>	Snacks (Upper)	Give snacks.
Bed	1 8 Q	Door (Upper Left)	Move to Kitchen.
Room	2 abc	Laundry Basket (Upper)	Bathe pet.

	Oper	Operation						
Location	Shortcut mode	Walking mode (Window area)	Description					
	3 def	Dog House (Upper Right)	Pet sleeps.					
Bed Room	4 ghi	Book (Down Right)	Play English Quiz.					
	5 jkl	Injector (Down Left)	Cure pet.					

# **Action Operations**

In mPet window, press (Action) to perform the operations listed below (*Train/Commend/Discipline*). Pet growth varies by operations.

ltem		Description
	Sit	Teach pet to sit down.
	Roll	Teach pet to roll over.
Train	Turn	Teach pet to turn around.
	Bark	Teach pet to bark.
	Paw	Teach pet to give you a paw.

Item	1	Description
Commend	Praise	Praise pet for good behavior.
Commend	Pet	Cheer pet up.
Discipline	Warn	Order pet not to do.
Discipline	Punish	Punish pet for bad behavior.

#### Tip

### • When pet refuse to act

Pet sometimes refuse to act as operated, due to such as the first time operation, pet status. Teach pet repeatedly or check the status and take care.

### When each operation ends

Pet barks and responds to operation with emotional state text bubble; pet status window appears. Check the pet status by following category: Health/Fatigue/Fullness/Clean/Stress/Obedient/Intimacy.

### ♣ Options

Item	Description
Location	Select a location from among <i>Outsidel Living room</i> / <i>Kitchen</i> / <i>Bedroom</i> .
Pet Inventory	Show Pet list to select various settings (�P.24-9).
Pet Status	Check Pet status while pet is playing around.
Options	Select mPet sound/display settings (�P.24-10).
Help	Check mPet operations description.

# Other Operations

### **Adopt a New Pet**

Up to 5 pets can be adopted.

- In mPet window, select Options → Pet Inventory
- **?** Select  $Options \rightarrow Adopt \ a \ new \ pet$

Perform Steps 2 and 3 in "Select Pet" (⊕P.24-5)

# **Pet Inventory**

- In mPet window, select Options → Pet Inventory
- 2 Select a pet

#### Tip

• Pet status

In Step 2, select *Options* → *View status* 

- · Rename your pet
  - 1 In Step 2, highlight the pet
  - ② Options → Rename
  - (3) Enter a name

# Say Goodbye

- In mPet window, select *Options* → *Pet Inventory*
- 2 Highlight pet and select *Options* → *Say Goodbye*
- 3 Press 💬 (Yes)
- 4 Press

### Note

. Once given up, pet cannot be restored.

# mPet Sound & Settings

Default Setting Sound: Sound only Navigation: Shortcut mode
Sound type: Voice

- In mPet window, select Options → Options
- **?** Perform operations to set

To set pet sound

- (1) Select Sound
- Select an item and Press

To set operation mode

- 1 Select Navigation
- 2 Select an item and Press

To set action menu sound

- (1) Select *Sound type*
- Select an item and Press
- 3 Press

#### Tip

#### · Sound Items

*Sound & Vibrate*: Pet barks and 705SC vibrates simultaneously.

Sound only: Pet barks.

*Vibrate*: 705SC vibrates with no pet barking. *No sound*: No vibration and with no pet barking.

#### • Navigation Items

Shortcut mode: Show available shortcuts indicators in mPet window to use assigned shortcuts keys.

Walking mode: Use to move locations with the pet.

### • Sound type Items

Voice: Indicate the selected action operation by voice.

Melody: Indicate the selected action operation by melody.

# Comic Surfing

"コミックサーフィン" is the file viewer for browsing electronic comic/photo book files (CCF files) saved in *Book* folder in Data Folder. Enlarge/reduce images, scroll the page easily, browse more lively images with sound/ vibration effects

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. No Content Key is required to browse the default sample files in 705SC.

# Browsing Electronic Comic

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli
  - $\rightarrow$  S! application list
  - → コミックサーフィン

#### Tip

After starting

Refer to  $\wedge \mathcal{N} \mathcal{J}$  in  $\exists \exists y \not = \forall x \in \mathcal{J}$ .

After changing phone models

Move CCF files to Memory Card; download Content Key again to browse files on new handset. Note that, some contents require downloading CCF files again.

# S! Appli

# Security

- Default Setting Net Access: Per session
  - Application Autoinvocation: Per session
  - Local connectivity: Per session
  - Read user data access: Per access
  - Write use data access: Per access

Set whether to allow S! Appli to automatically use communication functions. Alternatively, set to display a confirmation message when activating S! Appli or using communications.

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  S! Application list
- Highlight S! Appli, select *Options* → **Permissions**
- **?** Select items to set

### Web accessing functions

Select Net Access

### **Automatic starting functions**

Select *Application Autoinvocation* 

#### Connection functions to external devices

Select *Local connectivity* 

### Read user data access function

Select Read user data access

#### Write user data access function

Select Write user data access

▲ Select items and press (Save)



#### Tip

#### · Permissions Items

Setting for each item are as follows. Settings vary by item.

Always: Always allow the use of the function.

*Per session*: After activating, S! Appli asks, for the first use, whether to allow the use of the function. Display this message only once.

*Per access*: Every time you use a function, display a message for confirmation.

Never: Never allow the use of the function.

#### To restore defaults

In Step 3, select  $Reset \rightarrow Yes$ 

# S! Appli Settings

Make S! Appli settings and restore defaults.

# Backlight

Default Setting Normal settings

Set Display settings for the backlight.

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Appli settings  $\rightarrow$  Backlight
- 2 Select the setting and press

#### Tip

#### · Backlight Items

Always On: Set the backlight always on.

Always Off: Set the backlight always off.

Normal settings: Settings of Backlight time (◆P.8-7) for Display settings take priority.

# Application Volume

Default Setting = Level 3

Adjust the volume of sounds.

2 Use to adjust the volume and press

#### Tip

Sound volume in Manner Profile
 Sound volume follows the settings of the current Manner Profile.

# Vibration

Default Setting On

Set whether or not to active the vibration when using S! Appli with vibrator.

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Appli settings  $\rightarrow$  Vibration
- 2 Select an item and press

# S! Appli Sort

Default Setting By Date

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli  $\rightarrow S!$  Appli settings  $\rightarrow S!$  Appli sort
- 2 Select an item and press

# Reset S! Appli Settings

Restore S! Appli settings to defaults.

- Press (Menu) and select S! Appli
  → S! Appli settings → Reset S! Appli settings
- **2** Enter Phone Password, press (Confirm) and select *Yes*



# Functions

Main Menu Item	Item	Page		
CI Appli	S! Application list	P.24-2		
S! Appli	S! Appli Settings	P.24-13		
	Yahoo! Keitai	P.21-3		
	Bookmarks	P.22-9		
Yahoo! Keitai	Saved pages	P.22-8		
falloo! Kellal	Enter URL	P.21-3		
	History	P.22-11		
	Browser settings	P.23-2		
Media Player	Music	P.10-3		
iviedia Flayei	Video	P.10-9		
	Take photo	P.7-4		
	Record video	P.7-10		
Camera	Go to photos	P.7-5		
Calliela	Go to videos	P.7-11		
	Dynamic effect list	P.7-19		
	Video editor	P.7-18		

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
	Pictures	P.11-2
	Videos	P.11-2
	Sounds & Ringtones	P.11-2
Data Folder	S! Appli	P.11-2
	Book	P.11-2
	Other documents	P.11-2
	Memory status	P.11-3
	Received msgs	P.17-4, 18-2
	Create msg	P.17-8
	Drafts	P.18-8
	Unsent msgs	P.18-9
Messaging	Sent msgs	P.18-8
	Templates	P.17-14
	Server mail box	P.19-2
	Settings	P.20-2, 20-5
	Memory status	P.18-2

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
	Alarms	P.14-2
	Calendar	P.14-5
	Voice recorder	P.14-15
	World clock	P.14-17
	Calculator	P.14-18
Tools	Converter	P.14-19
	Stopwatch	P.14-21
	Dictionary	P.14-22
	Photo slide	P.8-2
	Interpreter	P.14-22
	Memory status	P.14-12
Phonebook	Phonebook List	P.5-9

Main Menu Item	ltem	Page
	Phone settings	-
	Sound settings	P.9-4
	Display settings	P.8-1
	Call settings	-
Settings	Phonebook settings	P.5-1
	Connectivity	P.12-1
	Security	P.13-1
	Software Update	P.25-10
	Memory settings	P.13-10, 15-9, 15-9

# 🎜 Troubleshooting

- 705SC does not turn on
  - ✓ Is battery empty?
  - → Replace or charge battery.
  - ✓ Is battery installed in 705SC?
  - → Install battery correctly.
- When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears
  - ✓ Is *PIN lock* set to *Enable*?
  - → If *PIN lock* is *Enable*, enter PIN.
- When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears
  - ✓ Is *USIM lock* set to *Enable*?
  - → If *USIM lock* is *Enable*, enter USIM password.

- Please insert USIM card or This card cannot be recognized appears when 705SC is turned on or executing a function
  - ✓ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
  - Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
  - ✓ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
  - → Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
  - Are the IC contacts of USIM Card contaminated with fingerprints, etc.?
  - → Wipe contamination off with a clean, dry cloth, and install USIM Card correctly.

- Reading USIM Cannot operate or Reading USIM Card Cannot start appears
  - → USIM Card data is being read. Try again later.
- A Busy tone continues after dialing
  - ✓ Have you entered a phone number beginning with zero such as an area code?
  - → Enter a phone number beginning with zero such as an area code.
  - ☑ Is 705SC set to *Offline mode*? ( 「 appears)
  - → Change 705SC to another mode such as *Normal*.

- **圏外 or Out appears and no calls can be initiated** 
  - **✓** 705SC is out-of-range.
  - → Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
- Calls are interrupted or disconnected
  - ☑ Does 圏外 or **Out** appear?
  - → Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
  - ✓ Is battery empty?
  - → Replace or charge battery.
- Unable to initiate a call
  - ✓ Is Call Barring set?
  - → Deactivate Call Barring.

- Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging
  - ✓ Is Privacy lock set?
  - → Cancel Privacy lock.
- Clicking noise is heard during a call
  - ✓ Noise may be generated when the signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.
- Unable to charge battery
  - ✓ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into 705SC?
  - → Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
  - ☑ Is AC Charger securely inserted into an electric outlet?
  - → Insert AC Charger securely.
  - ✓ Is battery installed in 705SC?
  - → Install battery correctly.

- ✓ Are the charging terminals of 705SC, battery or the connector plug of AC Charger clean?
- → Clean the contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
- ✓ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
- → Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- ☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
- → Replace with a new battery.
- Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
- → Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

- ✓ Does 705SC or battery become very warm during charging?
- → If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After 705SC and battery are cool, retry charging.

### Devices become hot

- During charging, AC Charger may become hot.
- ✓ 705SC may become hot during charging or a long call.
- → If 705SC can be touched with your hand, it is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (◆P.25-25).

### Battery drains quickly

- ☑ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
- → Use 705SC in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (♠P.1-12).

### Display flickers

- ✓ Is 705SC used near a fluorescent light?
- → Use 705SC as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

### Display is dim or unlit

☑ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

- Unable to play music through speaker
  - ✓ Is Manner Profile set?
  - → Cancel Manner Profile.
  - ✓ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?
  - → Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone from 705SC.
- Too many applications are already running, thus unable to launch anymore appears
  - ✓ Memory is low or full.
  - → Delete unnecessary S! Mail messages. If multiple functions are active, close some of them.

- Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung PC Studio
  - ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
  - → If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with the supplied USB cable, installing the driver is required. Install the driver from the supplied CD-ROM.
  - ☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
  - → Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.

- ✓ Are Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> or PC USB connection port and Samsung PC Studio settings the same?
- → Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

### Some Phonebook entries do not appear

- ☑ Is 705SC set to *Hide* in Secret Mode?
- → Set to *Show* in Secret Mode.

### Message cannot be created

- ✓ Shared Memory may be full.
- → Delete messages. If less than 464 KB remains, messages cannot be created.

### Try again appears

- ✓ Signal conditions are poor.
- → Move for a stronger signal and try again.

# Sending message failed or Unknown error appears

- Network connection failed.
- → Try again later.

### All available connections are busy appears

- ✓ New S! Mail arrives while 705SC is being used for packet data communications.
- → End the data communication and try again.

# Service unavailable appears

- ☑ 705SC is outside the service area.
- → Send from within the service area.

### No response appears

- ✓ Network/Server is busy.
- → Try again later.

- Change from flight profile to other profile for network service, created message will be saved in outbox appears
  - **☑** *Offline mode* is active.
  - → Cancel *Offline mode* and try again.
- Cannot download because of too large data appears
  - ✓ S! Appli memory is full.
  - → Delete unnecessary S! Appli and try again.
- Received invalid data. Quit download or Cannot download because of too large data appears
  - → File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

# Software Update

Check for 705SC software updates and download as required. Choose to begin *Update* or *Schedule update*.

- Press (Menu) and select *Settings*→ *Software update*
- 2 Press (Yes)
  705SC connects to network.
- **Read Terms of Use and select** *Agree*Read through Terms of Use before selecting *Agree*.
- 4 Enter Center Access Code (♦P.1-24) and press ■

Update Result appears.

# 5 Press

### To update immediately

Select *Update now* to start the update. When completed, 705SC turns the power off and on again; then Notification window appears.



**Notification Window** 

### To schedule later update

- 1 Select *Schedule update*
- 2 Press (Yes)
- ③ Press [ (Yes)
- 4 Select schedule date and press
- Select schedule time and press
- **(6)** Confirm schedule date & time and press

#### Tip

#### Procedures

Procedures can be found in the SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp).

#### Connection fees

Connection fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading, and rewriting).

#### Scheduled update time

Confirmation window appears at scheduled update time. Press or wait approximately ten seconds to start. Update will not start while 705SC is in use. When the current operation ends, confirmation window appears. But other functions active, and ten minutes after scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.



**Notification Window** 

#### • To cancel Schedule update

- (1) Perform Steps 1 to 5, select Cancel schedule
- (2) Press (Yes)

#### Note

- Charge battery beforehand; a low battery may cause update to fail.
- When Scheduled update time comes and 705SC is out-of-range, Software Update does not start.
- Keep 705SC in a place where signal is strong and stable.
- 705SC Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost information, etc.
- During update, calling or receiving messages, etc. cannot be used.
- . Update may take for a while.
- Update failure may disable 705SC. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

# Symbols & Pictograms

# Symbols

# **Double-byte Symbols**

ΧΨ Ωαβγδεζηθικλμνξοπρστ υ φ χ ψ ω Α Б Β Γ Д Ε Ё Ж З И Й К Л М Н О П СТУФХЦЧШЩЪЫЬЭЮЯабвг ёжзийклмнопрстуфхцчшшъ ドルヤ 鉃 礼 st mm cm km mg kg cc ㎡ 喊 

# **Single-byte Symbols**

space> ! " # \$ % & ' ( ) \* + , - . / : ; < = > ?
@ [ ¥ ] ^ \_ ` { | } ~ . 「 」、 - \* °

# **Symbol Conversions**

Symbol Label	Symbol	Symbol Label	Symbol
あっと	@@	ころん	: ;
いこーる	==	こんま	,
えん	¥¥	さんかく	△▲▽▼
おんぷ	<b>&gt;</b>	しかく	□■◇◆
かける	×	どう	> // 々
かっこ	0 [] [] () $\Diamond$	ぱーせんと	%%
	[]''""()()	ほし	☆★
	[] {} <> 《》	まる	$\bigcirc \bullet \bigcirc$
から	~	やじるし	<b>→←</b> ↑↓
こめ	*	ゆうびん	Ŧ

# **Pictograms**

<b>⊕</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>\rightarrow</b>	Ø	0	<b></b>	e¥9	55	2	K	OFF	0	0		•	_3	.ov.	<b>+</b>	0
_				<b>3</b> \$							-							7,
<b>a</b>	4	Â	<b>8</b>	- 0		<u> </u>	0	3	M	Δ	Z.	×	0	U		3	<u> </u>	TM
-	4	å	Ħ	(AC)	*	ď	×	4	K	2	€€	×	(E)	9		Щ	爱	TPI
€		Ĥ	<b>()</b>	ď	M	#	jej	5		U	黒	水	9_0	*	兽	Ė	<u>"B</u>	
	0	#I	<u></u>	79	(a)	જી	0	6	$\triangleleft$	***	A	?	ಶ್ವತ	1	22	-	Ä	
	ಶ	81	<b>(</b>	Q	Vś		75	7	No.	36	3	9	윤	<b>(1)</b>	àâ	111	4	
4	0	-	۵	×	35	879	W	В	41	Ÿ.	Ø	۱	€ે	00	ů:	oc.	40	
ō	<b>S</b>	Ps.	@	4-	0	<b>9</b> //	Ł	9		<u></u>	J.	8	žž	a	60	688	4	
<b>a</b>	€₽	鶏	@	•	Ŧ	<b>%</b>	Tal	0		数		∌	£.*	(D)II		Ä	13	
9	<b>(</b> )	1	<b>A</b>	长	889/	<u>&amp;</u>	Ψ	得	8	奎	Û		- 23	(54)	Ô	li.	<b>3</b>	
8	<b>(</b> b)	A.P	8	Ø	277	BK:	•	割	I	ul P	- 00	550	, e	@	À		G###	
	(1)	4	4	.39	- 1	630	•	IJ	23	<b>"</b>	<b>a</b>	(8)	<b>13</b>	0	9		(A)	
•	(1)	ď	4	€.		•	4	ID	90	G-	1	<b>@</b>	-	M	<b>a</b>		(43)	
å	<b>(</b> )	Alia.		•	33	9%	<b>#</b>	満	1112	2	Q	1	<u> </u>	8	375	<b>=</b>	39	
4	•	71		Apple	777	ŶĀ.	ਰਦ	空	Ω	(i)k	抻	Ŧ	0 0	99	0		(W)	
<b>E</b>	0	7	Д		0	0	NEW	指	1111	<b>3</b>	90	-	7,7	19	7	SHE 전투	4	
₩.	0	-	@	J		긒		宮	7	2	ø	(10)	3	9.9	9		42	
4	Ø	4	9	8	(3)	RTM		-9	V3	9	99"	1/9	ê ê		a		8	
	<u>©</u>	6	9	***	A.		眉	- A	***	Q	9	<b>@</b>	ĬaĬ		(4)		2	
1	<b>(</b>	8	9	639	2	24	無	40	Ж	0	0	•	<b>1,1</b>	۵	· A	(e)	87	
P.	(1)	0	0	225	Sp.	TO.	圓	Ġ	8	A	0	6	ř.3	2	ø	<b></b>	4	
A	· (c)	-@-	<u>a</u>	Ţ	A	Ci)	•	1	TÔP	-8	Ŵ	•	2,3	-	<b>3</b>	-	<b>\$</b>	
4	382	4	8	<i>a</i>	<u>~</u>		0	¥	ďĸ	ж	φ.	-	¥	4.		<b>@</b>	<b>(49)</b>	
<u> </u>		3	₩	-	7	<b>A</b>	•	<b>→</b>	(0)	<b>(D)</b>	★	0	×	49	les Mil	(2)	A	
Ø.	4	**	120	9	40)	壳	0	+	(R)		=(D)	3	9	-	1	*	B	
रिश्र	ð	86	120 124	- NA	<b>A</b>	_	1	7	Ø	=0	2	-	ê,î	<u></u>	4	<u>@</u>	Æ	

- Pictograms with \_\_\_\_\_ are animated.
  Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

# Memory List

Shared Memory						
	Received msgs	Up to 500 messages				
S! Mail	Drafts	Up to 10 messages				
3: IVIAII	Unsent msgs	Up to 10 messages				
	Sent msgs	Up to 250 messages				
	Received msgs	Up to 500 messages				
SMS	Drafts	Up to 10 messages				
	Unsent msgs	Up to 10 messages				
	Sent msgs	Up to 250 messages				
	Pictures					
	Videos					
Data Folder	Sounds & Ringtones	Up to 999 items (files and subfolders) per				
Data Folder	S! Appli	folder				
	Book					
	Other documents					

# Specifications

705SC specifications may change without prior notice.

### SoftBank 705SC

Item	Specification
Weight	Approximately 85 g
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: Approximately 160 minutes (3G) Approximately 200 minutes (GSM) Video Call: Approximately 90 minutes (3G)
Continuous Standby Time (705SC closed)	Approximately 220 hours (3G) Approximately 255 hours (GSM)
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 51.4 x 100.6 x 12.9 mm (705SC closed)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

• 705SC with battery installed.

- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving 705SC on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent 705SC operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Using S! Appli may reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery in stable signal conditions.
   Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with 705SC closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

# Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Туре	Lithium-ion
Capacity	880 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 45 x 33.8 x 5 mm (without protruding parts)

# **AC Charger**

Item	Specification
Power Source	AC 100 V-240 V, 50/60 Hz (with power cable)
Output Voltage/ Current	DC 5 V/720 mA
Charging Temperature	5 to 40 °C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 53 x 49 x 20 mm (without cables)
Cord Length	Approximately 180 cm

# **INDEX**

#### Δ

AC Charger1-15
Acoustic shock15-5
Activate Secret mode13-6
Activating Bluetooth®12-3
Activating S! Appli24-3
Active Slide15-6
Add to playlist10-5
Adding Reject Black List13-9
Adjusting earpiece volume2-7
Adjusting ringtone volume2-3, 6-3
Adjusting volume level to play
10-7, 10-12
Alarms14-2
All music10-3
Anniversary14-9
Answer Machine2-5
Answering mode12-8
Anykey answer15-5

Applicable Profiles for Bluetooth®		
Attaching files		
В		
Backlight       8-7, 10-8, 24-13         Battery       1-11, 1-13         Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> 12-2         Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Address       12-3         Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> service       12-3         Browser Information       23-3		
С		
Cache21-2 Calculator14-18		

Calendar14-5
Calendar window format14-6
Call answer mode9-3
Call cost limit2-12
Call Log Records2-9
Call Transfer service16-3
Call Waiting16-8
Caller ID16-13
Camera7-2
Camera mode7-3
Camera setting7-12
Capturing continuous images7-8
Capturing in Mosaic shot7-8
Capturing mode7-3
Capturing still images7-4
Capturing videos7-10
Category5-7
Centre access code1-24
Certificates22-16, 23-4
Changing a file name11-15
Changing a folder name 11-15, 18-15
Changing mail address20-2
Changing phone password13-2

Changing PIN13-2
Changing PIN213-2
Changing profile3-3
Changing settings of each profile
9-2
Changing to SMS17-11
Changing to S! Mail17-11
Changing voice recorder settings
14-16
Charger Port1-7
Charging1-15, 1-16
Checking memory usage15-9, 18-2
Clear memory13-10
Clock Display8-4
Conference Call16-9
Connecting a Bluetooth®-compatible
device12-5, 12-8
Connection to another Bluetooth®
devices12-5
Content key info11-14
Converting currency or unit14-19
Cookie setting23-2
Copy protected file indicators18-5

Copy text	22-1
Copying characters	4-1
Copying files	11-1
Copying folders	11-1
Copying items	5-1
Copying Phonebook	5-1
Country code	15-
Creating a folder	11-14, 18-1
Creating a play list	10-
Creating messages	17-
Current contacts	2-
Cutting characters	4-1

#### D

Data folder7-15, 7-16, 11-2
Date and time setting1-18
Default name14-16
Default style20-4
Deleting a bookmark22-11
Deleting a file11-18
Deleting a folder11-18, 18-16
Deleting a Saved page22-9
Deleting a S! Appli24-5

Deleting access logs22-11
Deleting Cache23-4
Deleting Calendar items14-13
Deleting Call Log Records2-10
Deleting characters4-11
Deleting Cookies23-4
Deleting messages18-9
Deleting messages in server19-3
Deleting My devices12-5
Deleting Phonebook5-15
Deleting still images7-6
Deleting templates4-16, 18-9, 18-11
Dialing display8-8
Dialled Call Log Records2-9
Dictionary14-22
Display1-9
Display brightness8-7
Display mode14-7
Display Operator name8-5
Display rendering22-12
Display size of videos10-12
Displaying Slide show17-12
Download Content Key11-14
•

Downloading a S! Appli24-2	Entering characters4-2, 4-4	Н
Drafts18-2	Entering emoticons4-9	п
DTMF2-8, 6-5	Entering pictograms4-9	Holiday14-9
Dynamic effect list7-19	Entering symbols4-9	Home zone1-20
	Entering URL21-3	
E	Entry mode for characters4-2	
Earphone call15-3	Event list14-12	Image display23-2
Editing bookmarks22-10	External Device Port1-7	In-car charger1-16
Editing Calendar details14-12	F	Indicators for attached files17-16
Editing Phonebook5-14		Indicators for files11-2, 11-4
Editing still images7-16	File details11-14	Indicators in Drafts list18-4
Editing Style17-12	File Viewer11-5	Indicators in My devices list12-5
Editing the title for a Saved page	Font size4-14, 8-6, 8-8, 23-3	Indicators in Received messages list
22-8	Formatting Memory Card11-23	18-4
Editing Videos7-18	Forwarding18-8	Indicators in Sent messages18-5
Effect sound and keypad tone	Forwarding Messages19-4	Indicators in Unsent messages list
volume9-2	Forwarding messages in server 19-4	18-5
Effect sound setting9-3, 9-7	Frames7-5, 7-16	Initiating a call2-2, 2-14
Effects7-12		Initiating a call overseas2-14
Encode22-15	G	Initiating a Video Call6-2
Entering a number to select an item	Greeting Messages8-9	Initiating an international call
Entering by quoting text4-10		Inserting/Removing USIM Card1-3

Installing and removing battery1-13	Locking/unlocking11-14	Mobile tracker13-7
International code15-2	Locking/unlocking files11-14	Modifying characters4-11
International roaming2-13	Locking/Unlocking sound files 14-16	Move to USIM18-20
Interpreter14-22	Locking/Unlocking S! Appli24-4	mPet24-5
Invoking a function with Switch Bar		mPostcard7-6
1-22	M	Multi Selectorxiv
Invoking functions from Main menu	Mail art function17-6	Mute2-3, 2-8, 9-3
1-20	Mail Server19-2	My devices12-4, 12-7, 12-8
Items to save to Phonebook5-2	Mailbox18-2	My phone's name12-10
	Main menu style8-5	My phone's visibility12-9
J	Manner profile3-2	My phone's visibility for Bluetooth®
Java Script23-3	Mark default number5-14	12-9
Jump4-13	Mass storage12-12	N
IV.	Maximum of message size20-4	IV
K	Media Player10-2	Network mode2-13
Key assignments4-3	Memo14-10	Network password1-24, 16-13
Keypad Lock15-7	Memory Card Details11-23	Network Profile2-13
Keypad tone9-3	Message17-2	Network selection2-13
	Message details18-3	Network S! Appli24-2
L	Message List19-2	
Language	Message type icon18-3	0
Language8-9 List Font Size8-6	Missed Call2-4, 2-9	Offline Profile3-2
LIST FOUR 31268-6	Mobile Postcard7-6	Opening Saved page22-8

Operating messages in server19-2	Player settings10-7, 10-11	Received messages18-2
Operations available during a Video	Playing melody10-3	Receiving a call2-3
Call6-3	Playing video7-15, 10-9	Receiving a Video Call6-2
Operations during a call2-8	Playing voice14-16	Receiving all messages19-2
Option menu1-23	Popup menu8-6	Receiving data via Bluetooth®12-6
Outgoing/incoming call barring	Power ON/OFF1-17, 1-18	Receiving message in server19-2
service16-11	Predictive entry function ON/OFF	Receiving settings20-3
Owner information5-16	4-13	Record settings14-16
_	Preferences23-2	Recording voice14-15
Р	Preferred network2-14	Registering an S! Mail Template
Page Details22-14	Pre-installed11-2	18-19
Page Window21-4	Print via Bluetooth®12-6	Registering as S! Mail Template
Password Lock13-5	Privacy Lock13-6	18-6
Pasting characters4-12	Providing Manufacturer Number	Registering SMS templates4-15
Phone lock13-5	23-3	Registering to bookmark22-9
Phonebook search5-9	PUK Code1-5, 13-3	Registering to Phonebook5-4
Photo slide8-2	Putting a call on hold2-7	Rejecting call reception15-6
PIN1-5		Rejecting incoming calls13-8
PIN authentication at power on	Q	Renaming a still image file7-6
1-5, 13-3	Quoting for entries4-10	Renaming Memory Card11-22
PIN lock13-3	Quo 9	Renaming My devices12-4
PIN21-5	R	Renaming sound files14-16
PIN2 lock unlocking code13-3	Received call log2-9	Repeat mode10-7, 10-11

	Search type5-12	Side Key15-6
Reply with text20-6	Secure mode for data transfer 12-10	Simple Search Setting15-7
Reset13-11	Security24-12	Skin10-8
Reset all13-11	Security Codes1-23	Slide show11-3
Reset settings13-11	Selecting 3G or GSM2-13	SMS17-2, 20-5
Resetting a call cost2-11	Sending a bookmark URL22-10	SMS templates4-10
Resetting Call times2-11	Sending a message from Drafts 18-8	Softkeyxii
Resetting PIN lock13-3	Sending data via Bluetooth® 12-5	Software Update25-10
Resetting S! Appli settings24-14	Sending from Unsent Messages 18-9	Sort11-9, 14-13, 18-17
Restarting paused S! Appli24-4	Sending settings17-11, 20-2, 20-5	Sorting files11-9
Retry function17-2	Sending sound files14-16	Sound file details14-16
Retry with6-6	Sending still images via Bluetooth®	Sound file setting14-16
•		
Ringtone for a Voice Call5-8	12-5	Sound playback23-2
Ringtone for a Voice Call5-8		Sound playback23-2 Sound Settings9-4
· ·		
Ringtone for a Voice Call5-8	Sending URL22-14 Sending videos via Bluetooth®7-11, 12-5	Sound Settings9-4
Ringtone for a Voice Call5-8  Saving a page22-8	Sending URL22-14 Sending videos via Bluetooth®7-11, 12-5 Sending your image6-5	Sound Settings9-4 Speaker Phone call2-7
S Saving a page22-8 Saving as a template17-20	Sending URL22-14 Sending videos via Bluetooth®7-11, 12-5	Sound Settings9-4 Speaker Phone call2-7 Speed dialing5-12
Saving a page22-8 Saving as a template17-20 Saving attached files18-14	Sending URL	Sound Settings9-4 Speaker Phone call2-7 Speed dialing5-12 SSL/TLS21-2
Saving a page22-8 Saving as a template17-20 Saving attached files18-14 Saving images22-2	Sending URL22-14 Sending videos via Bluetooth®7-11, 12-5 Sending your image6-5 Sent messages18-2	Sound Settings         9-4           Speaker Phone call         2-7           Speed dialing         5-12           SSL/TLS         21-2           SSL/TLS certificate         23-4
S Saving a page	Sending URL	Sound Settings         9-4           Speaker Phone call         2-7           Speed dialing         5-12           SSL/TLS         21-2           SSL/TLS certificate         23-4           Still image details         7-6
Saving a page22-8 Saving as a template17-20 Saving attached files18-14 Saving images22-2	Sending URL       22-14         Sending videos via Bluetooth®       7-11, 12-5         Sending your image       6-5         Sent messages       18-2         Server Certification       22-14         Server Mail Size       19-2	Sound Settings       9-4         Speaker Phone call       2-7         Speed dialing       5-12         SSL/TLS       21-2         SSL/TLS certificate       23-4         Still image details       7-6         Stopping or Pausing S! Appli       24-3

3VG-1/Flasii Viewei11-6	Using a template17-14	Voice Recorder14-15
Switching callers16-10	Using Memory Card11-20	Volume2-7, 9-2, 24-13
Switching cameras7-5, 7-11	Using SMS templates4-15	
S! Appli24-2		W
S! Appli detailed information24-4	V	Wake-up Alarm14-2
S! Mail17-2	Various settings for Video Call 6-5	Wallpaper8-2
S! Mail templates17-14	vFile11-12	Web21-2
T	Vibration14-2, 24-14	Web access from a bookmark22-10
Task14-10	Vibrator/Sound settings9-2 Video Mode9-1	Web connection from access logs
Templates4-10, 18-2	Video settings7-14	World clock14-17
Timer7-11	Viewfinder7-2	V
	Viewing a file11-3	Υ
U	Viewing attached files18-13	Yahoo! Keitai22-16
Unsent messages18-2	Viewing Call cost2-11	
Updating information22-13	Viewing Call Log Records2-9	Z
Updating mail list19-2	Viewing Call times2-11	Zoom list8-7
USB connection12-10	Viewing Saved Calendar Entries	20011 1131
User dictionary4-14	14-12	Numerics
USIM Card1-2	Viewing your phone number (My Phonebook details)5-16	3D Pictogram20-5
USIM lock13-4		50 1 1000gram20-0
USIM password13-5	Visualization10-8	
Using a file11-10	Voice Mail Service16-5	

47.44 Voice December

44 o Heiner o tomoloto

CVC T/Flack® Viewer

# Warranty & After Sales Service

### Warranty

The purchased 705SC comes with a Warranty.

- Check the shop and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

  SoftBank is not liable for damages to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

### **Repair Requests**

Before submitting 705SC for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" section.

for a solution. If a problem persists, contact Customer Service (�P.25-25) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

#### Note

- 705SC files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of 705SC files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.
- Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.

# Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information.

For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Sof	tKan	k (Tust	omer	Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance

#### SoftBank International Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**(Please take care to dial correctly; international charges will

apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata,	General Information	(Toll-free)
Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	Customer Assistance	@ 0088-240-113 (Toll-free)
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	© 0088-241-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	© 0088-241-113 (Toll-free)
Ocalia Ilhaga Kuata Nara Chiga Wakayama	General Information	© 0088-242-157 (Toll-free)
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	Customer Assistance	© 0088-242-113 (Toll-free)
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa,	General Information	© 0088-250-157 (Toll-free)
Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	Customer Assistance	© 0088-250-113 (Toll-free)

# SoftBank 705SC User Guide



September 2006 Version 1
SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

\*For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

- \*Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.
- \*To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.

Model name: SoftBank 705SC

**Manufacturer : Samsung Electronics** 

Co., Ltd.